


DENON

INTEGRATED NETWORK AV RECEIVER


AVR-2312CI

Owner's Manual

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



CAUTION
RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK
DO NOT OPEN




CAUTION:
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT REMOVE COVER (OR BACK). NO USER-SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.

The lightning flash with arrowhead symbol, within an equilateral triangle, is intended to alert the user to the presence of uninsulated "dangerous voltage" within the product's enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock to persons.

The exclamation point within an equilateral triangle is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the appliance.

WARNING:
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.



Hot surface mark

CAUTION:
HOT SURFACE. DO NOT TOUCH.

The top surface over the internal heat sink may become hot when operating this product continuously. Do not touch hot areas, especially around the "Hot surface mark" and the top panel.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Read these instructions.
2. Keep these instructions.
3. Heed all warnings.
4. Follow all instructions.
5. Do not use this apparatus near water.
6. Clean only with dry cloth.
7. Do not block any ventilation openings. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
8. Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
9. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong are provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
10. Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
11. Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
12. Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus. When a cart is used, use caution when moving the cart/apparatus combination to avoid injury from tip-over.
13. Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
14. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.
15. Batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.



CAUTION:

To completely disconnect this product from the mains, disconnect the plug from the wall socket outlet. The mains plug is used to completely interrupt the power supply to the unit and must be within easy access by the user.

FCC INFORMATION (For US customers)

1. COMPLIANCE INFORMATION

Product Name: Integrated Network AV Receiver

Model Number: AVR-2312CI

This product complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this product may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this product must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Denon Electronics (USA), LLC

(a D&M Holdings Company)

100 Corporate Drive

Mahwah, NJ 07430-2041

Tel. (800) 497-8921

2. IMPORTANT NOTICE: DO NOT MODIFY THIS PRODUCT

This product, when installed as indicated in the instructions contained in this manual, meets FCC requirements. Modification not expressly approved by DENON may void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

3. IMPORTANT

When connecting this product to network hub or router, use only a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable which is available at retailer.

Follow all installation instructions. Failure to follow instructions could void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

4. NOTE

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the product OFF and ON, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the local retailer authorized to distribute this type of product or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

For Canadian customers:

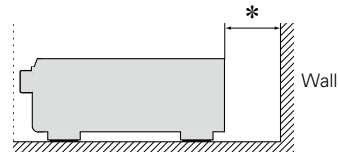
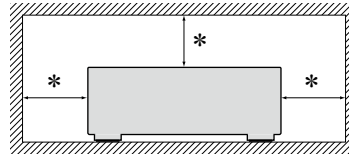
This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

❑ NOTES ON USE

WARNINGS

- Avoid high temperatures.
Allow for sufficient heat dispersion when installed in a rack.
- Handle the power cord carefully.
Hold the plug when unplugging the cord.
- Keep the unit free from moisture, water, and dust.
- Unplug the power cord when not using the unit for long periods of time.
- Do not obstruct the ventilation holes.
- Do not let foreign objects into the unit.
- Do not let insecticides, benzene, and thinner come in contact with the unit.
- Never disassemble or modify the unit in any way.
- Ventilation should not be impeded by covering the ventilation openings with items, such as newspapers, tablecloths or curtains.
- Naked flame sources such as lighted candles should not be placed on the unit.
- Observe and follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.
- Do not expose the unit to dripping or splashing fluids.
- Do not place objects filled with liquids, such as vases, on the unit.
- Do not handle the mains cord with wet hands.
- When the switch is in the OFF (STANDBY) position, the equipment is not completely switched off from MAINS.
- The equipment shall be installed near the power supply so that the power supply is easily accessible.

❑ CAUTIONS ON INSTALLATION



*** For proper heat dispersal, do not install this unit in a confined space, such as a bookcase or similar enclosure.**

- More than 12 in. (0.3 m) is recommended.
- Do not place any other equipment on this unit.

Getting started

Thank you for purchasing this DENON product. To ensure proper operation, please read this owner's manual carefully before using the product. After reading them, be sure to keep them for future reference.

Contents

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Getting started | 1 |
| Accessories | 2 |
| Features | 2 |
| Cautions on handling | 3 |

Basic version

| | |
|---|----|
| Connections | 5 |
| Important information | 5 |
| Connecting an HDMI-compatible device | 7 |
| Connecting a TV | 10 |
| Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player | 11 |
| Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV) | 12 |
| Connecting a digital video recorder | 13 |
| Connecting a digital camcorder | 14 |
| Connecting a control dock for iPod | 14 |
| Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port | 15 |
| Connecting an antenna | 16 |
| Connecting a CD player | 16 |
| Connecting to a home network (LAN) | 17 |
| Connecting an external control device | 18 |
| Settings | 19 |
| Set up speakers (Audyssey® Auto Setup) | 19 |
| Making the network settings (Network Setup) | 25 |
| Playback (Basic operation) | 26 |
| Important information | 26 |
| Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player | 28 |
| Playing a CD player | 28 |
| Playing an iPod | 29 |
| Tuning in radio stations | 33 |
| Playing a network audio | 35 |
| Playing a USB memory device | 50 |
| Selecting a listening mode (SURROUND MODE) | 52 |
| Selecting a listening mode | 52 |

Advanced version

| | |
|---|-----|
| Speaker installation/connection (Advanced connection) | 57 |
| Install | 57 |
| Connect | 59 |
| Set up speakers | 65 |
| Playback (Advanced operation) | 68 |
| Convenient functions | 68 |
| Playback in ZONE2 (Separate room) | 79 |
| Audio output | 79 |
| Playback | 80 |
| Quick select function | 81 |
| Sleep timer function | 81 |
| How to make detailed settings | 82 |
| Menu map | 82 |
| Examples of menu screen displays | 83 |
| Examples of menu and front display | 84 |
| Inputting characters | 85 |
| SOURCE SELECT | 87 |
| AUDIO/VIDEO ADJUST | 94 |
| SYSTEM SETUP | 101 |
| INFORMATION | 117 |
| Operating the connected devices by remote control unit | 118 |
| Operating AV devices | 118 |
| Registering preset codes | 119 |
| Operating devices | 121 |
| Specifying the zone used with the main remote control unit | 123 |
| Resetting the remote control unit | 123 |

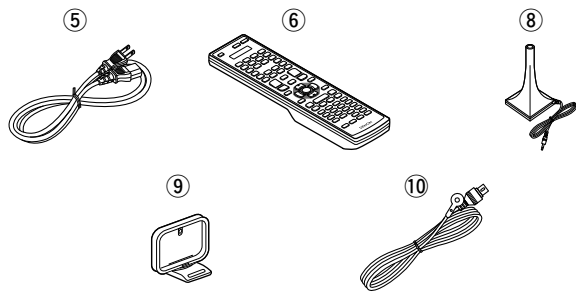
Information

| | |
|---|-----|
| Part names and functions | 125 |
| Front panel | 125 |
| Display | 126 |
| Rear panel | 127 |
| Remote control unit | 128 |
| Other information | 130 |
| Trademark information | 130 |
| Surround | 131 |
| Relationship between video signals and monitor output | 135 |
| Explanation of terms | 137 |
| Troubleshooting | 140 |
| Resetting the microprocessor | 144 |
| Specifications | 145 |

Accessories

Check that the following parts are supplied with the product.

| | |
|--|---|
| ① Getting Started | 1 |
| ② CD-ROM (Owner's manual) | 1 |
| ③ Warranty (for North America model only)..... | 1 |
| ④ Service network list..... | 1 |
| ⑤ Power cord | 1 |
| ⑥ Remote control unit (RC-1156)..... | 1 |
| ⑦ R6/AA batteries | 2 |
| ⑧ Setup microphone (DM-A409)..... | 1 |
| ⑨ AM loop antenna | 1 |
| ⑩ FM indoor antenna | 1 |



Features

Fully discrete, identical quality and power for all 7 channels (135 W x 7ch)

The unit is equipped with a power amplifier that reproduces highfidelity sound in surround mode with equal quality and power for all channels, true to the original sound.

The power amplifier circuit adopts a discrete-circuit configuration that achieves high-quality surround sound reproduction.

Supports internet radio, music, and photograph streaming

Supports AirPlay® (page 73)

When connected to a network, this unit can play audio files and still images such as photographs that are stored on your computer. You can also listen to internet radio and a host of other online music sources that use network technology. This unit also supports AirPlay that lets you stream your music library from an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch or iTunes.

Compatible with “Denon Remote App” for performing basic operations of the unit with an iPhone or iPod touch*1

“Denon Remote App” is application software that allows you to perform basic operations with an iPhone or iPod touch such as turning the unit ON/OFF, controlling the volume, and switching the source.

*1 Download “Denon Remote App” from iTunes® App Store. The unit needs to be connected to a LAN and the iPhone/iPod touch needs to be connected to the same network by Wi-Fi (wireless LAN).

Setup Wizard, providing easy-to-follow setup instructions

First select the language when prompted. Then simply follow the instructions displayed on the TV screen to set up the speakers, network, etc.

Easy to use, Graphical User Interface

This unit is equipped with an easy to see “Graphical User Interface” that uses menu displays and levels. The use of level displays increases operability of the this unit.

Direct play for iPod® and iPhone® via USB (page 15)

Music data from an iPod can be played back if you connect the USB cable supplied with the iPod via the USB port of this unit, and also an iPod can be controlled with the remote control unit for this unit. When an iPod is connected, merely pressing **iPod** ► on the main unit starts playback of music from the iPod.

Supports HDMI 1.4a with 3D, ARC, Deep Color, “x.v.Color” , Auto Lip Sync and HDMI control function (page 7)

This unit can output 3D video signals input from a Blu-ray Disc player to a TV that supports a 3D system. This unit also supports the ARC (Audio Return Channel) function, which reproduces TV sound with this unit via an HDMI cable used for connecting the unit and a TV*2.

*2 The TV should support the ARC function.

7-HDMI inputs and 1-output

The unit is equipped with 7 HDMI input connectors for connecting devices with HDMI connectors, such as a Blu-ray Disc player, game machine, HD video camera, etc.

All sources are up-scaled to 1080p

The unit is provided with an HDMI video up-scaling function that converts an analog video signal input to the unit to a 1080p (HD resolution) signal and supplies it to a TV via the HDMI connector. This enables the unit and a TV connected with a single HDMI cable and any video source to be reproduced precisely with HD level of quality.

High definition audio support

The unit is equipped with a decoder which supports high-quality digital audio format for Blu-ray Disc players such as Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD Master Audio, etc.

Cautions on handling**• Before turning the power on**

Check once again that all connections are correct and that there are no problems with the connection cables.

- Power is supplied to some of the circuitry even when the unit is set to the standby mode. When going on vacation or leaving home for long periods of time, be sure to unplug the power cord from the power outlet.

• About condensation

If there is a major difference in temperature between the inside of the unit and the surroundings, condensation (dew) may form on the operating parts inside the unit, causing the unit not to operate properly.

If this happens, let the unit sit for an hour or two with the power turned off and wait until there is little difference in temperature before using the unit.

• Cautions on using mobile phones

Using a mobile phone near this unit may result in noise. If that occurs, move the mobile phone away from this unit when it is in use.

• Moving the unit





Turn off the power and unplug the power cord from the power outlet. Next, disconnect the connection cables to other system units before moving the unit.



















• About care

















- Wipe the cabinet and control panel clean with a soft cloth.
- Follow the instructions when using a chemical cleaner.
- Benzene, paint thinner or other organic solvents as well as insecticide may cause material changes and discoloration if brought into contact with the unit, and should therefore not be used.

Basic version

Here, we explain the connections and basic operation methods for this unit.

- **Connections**  [page 5](#)
- **Settings**  [page 19](#)
- **Playback (Basic operation)**  [page 26](#)
- **Selecting a listening mode (SURROUND MODE)**  [page 52](#)

| | | |
|---|------------|--|
|  | Connection |  page 8, 10 |
| | Playback | – |
|  | Connection |  page 8, 11 |
| | Playback |  page 28 |
|  | Connection |  page 8, 13 |
| | Playback | – |
|  | Connection |  page 14 |
| | Playback |  page 29 |
|  | Connection |  page 15 |
| | Playback |  page 50 |
|  | Connection |  page 14 |
| | Playback | – |
|  | Connection |  page 17 |
| | Playback |  page 35 |

| | | |
|---|------------|--|
|  | Connection |  page 8, 11 |
| | Playback |  page 28 |
|  | Connection |  page 16 |
| | Playback |  page 28 |
|  | Connection |  page 8, 12 |
| | Playback | – |
|  | Connection |  page 15 |
| | Playback |  page 31 |
|  | Connection |  page 8 |
| | Playback | – |
|  | Connection |  page 16 |
| | Playback |  page 33 |

For speaker connections, see [page 59](#),  [page 6](#) “Connecting the speakers”.

Connections

Important information

- Make connections as follows before using this unit. Select an appropriate connection type according to the devices to be connected.
- You may need to make some settings on this unit depending on the connection method. Refer to each description for more information.
- Select the cables (sold separately) according to the devices being connected.

NOTE

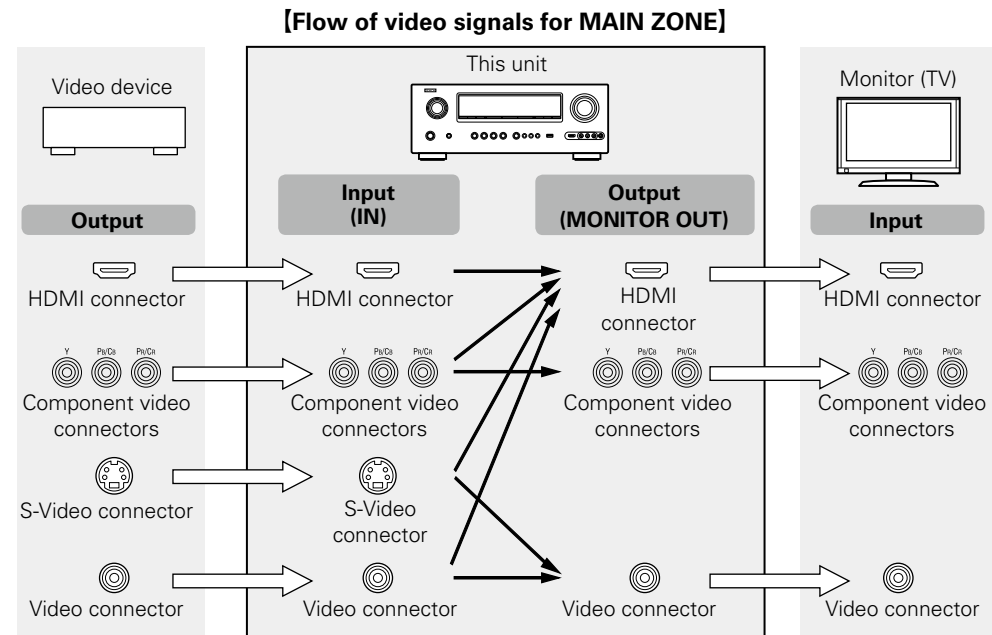
- Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed (When the Setup wizard is running, follow the instructions in the Setup wizard screen for making connections.).
- When running the Setup wizard, turn off the power supply of connected devices.
- When making connections, also refer to the operating instructions of the other devices being connected.
- Be sure to connect the left and right channels properly (left with left, right with right).
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in noise.

Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)

This unit is equipped with four types of video input connectors (HDMI, Component video, S-Video and video) and three types of video output connectors (HDMI, Component video and video).

Use the connectors corresponding to the devices to be connected.

This function automatically converts various formats of video signals input to this unit into the formats used to output the video signals from this unit to a monitor.



in Set as Necessary

- Set when not using the video conversion function.
"Video Convert" ([page 90](#))
- Set when changing the resolution of the video signal.
"Resolution" ([page 90](#))



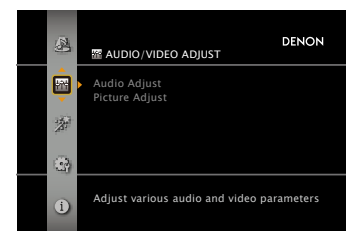
- The video conversion function supports the NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC 4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60 formats.
- The resolution of the video signal output from the HDMI connector of this unit is set in “Resolution” (page 90) in the menu (page 136).
- Resolutions of HDMI-compatible TVs can be checked at “HDMI Information” – “Monitor” (page 117).

NOTE

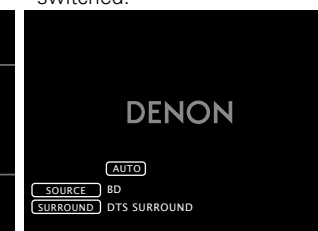
- HDMI signals cannot be converted into analog signals.
- When a non-standard video signal from a game machine or some other source is input, the video conversion function might not operate.

Examples of screen display

- Menu screen



- Status display screen
When the input source is switched.



- When the volume is adjusted.



Status display: The operating status appears briefly on the screen when the input source is switched or the volume is changed.

NOTE

- The status display screen cannot be displayed at a computer’s resolution (e.g. VGA) or while certain 3D video contents is being played.
- When the menu is operated on a computer’s resolution (e.g. VGA) or during playback of certain 3D video content, the playback image switches to the menu screen image.
- The menu screen and status display are displayed when this unit and a TV are connected by HDMI. Furthermore, the menu screen and status display are not displayed when this unit and a TV are connected by VIDEO and COMPONENT VIDEO.

Connecting an HDMI-compatible device

You can connect up to eight HDMI-compatible devices (7-inputs/1-output) to the unit.

HDMI function

This unit supports the following HDMI functions:

- 3D
- Deep Color ([page 137](#))
- Auto Lip Sync ([page 106, 137](#))
- “x.v.Color”, sYCC601 color, Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color ([page 137, 138](#))
- High definition digital audio format
- ARC (Audio Return Channel)
- Content Type
- CEC (HDMI control)

Copyright protection system

In order to play back digital video and audio such as BD-Video or DVD-Video via HDMI connection, both this unit and TV or the player need to support the copyright protection system known as HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copyright protection technology comprised of data encryption and authentication of the connected AV devices. This unit supports HDCP.

- If a device that does not support HDCP is connected, video and audio are not output correctly. Read the owner’s manual of your television or player for more information.

About HDMI cables

- When a device supporting Deep Color is connected, use a cable compatible with “High Speed HDMI cable” or “High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet”.
- When the ARC function is used, connect a device with a “Standard HDMI cable with Ethernet” or “High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet” for HDMI 1.4a.

HDMI control function ([page 68](#))

This function allows you to operate external devices from the unit and operate the unit from external devices.

NOTE

- The HDMI control function may not work depending on the device it is connected to and its settings.
- You cannot operate a TV or Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player that is not compatible with the HDMI control function.

About 3D function

This unit supports input and output of 3D (3 dimensional) video signals of HDMI 1.4a.

To play back 3D video, you need a TV and player that provide support for the HDMI1.4a 3D function and a pair of 3D glasses.

NOTE

- When playing back 3D video, refer to the instructions provided in the manual of your playback device together with this manual.
- When playing back 3D video content, the menu screen or status display screen can be superimposed over the image. However, the menu screen or status display screen cannot be superimposed over certain 3D video content.
- If 3D video with no 3D information is input, the menu screen and status display on this unit are displayed over the playback video.
- If 2D video is converted to 3D video on the television, the menu screen and status display on this unit are not displayed correctly. To view the menu screen and status display on this unit correctly, turn the television setting that converts 2D video to 3D video off.

About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function

The Audio Return Channel in HDMI 1.4a enables a TV, via a single HDMI cable, to send audio data “upstream” to this unit.

NOTE

- To enable the ARC function, set “HDMI Control” – “Control” to “ON” ([page 106](#)).
- When connecting a TV that does not support the ARC function, a separate connection using an audio cable is required. In this case, refer to “Connecting a TV” ([page 10](#)) for the connection method.

About Content Type

HDMI 1.4a enables simple, automated picture setting selection with no user intervention.

NOTE

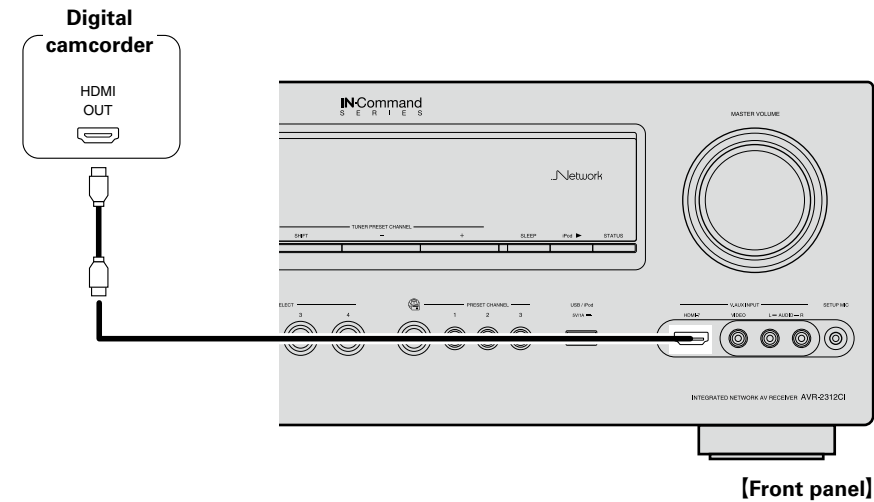
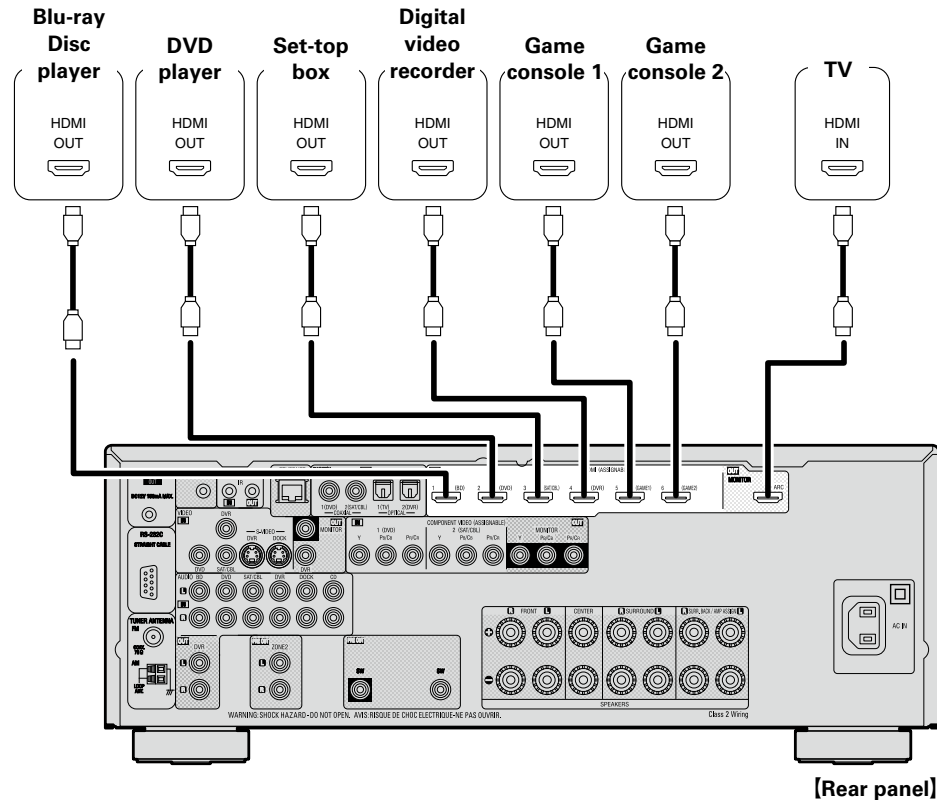
To enable the Content Type, set “Video Mode” to “Auto” ([page 89](#)).

Cables used for connections

Audio and video cable (sold separately)

HDMI cable 

- This interface allows transfer of digital video signals and digital audio signals over a single HDMI cable.



- When this unit is connected to other devices with HDMI cables, connect this unit and TV also with an HDMI cable.
- When connecting a device that supports Deep Color, please use a "High Speed HDMI cable" or "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet".
- Video signals are not output if the input video signals do not match the monitor's resolution. In this case, switch the Blu-ray Disc/DVD player's resolution to a resolution with which the monitor is compatible.
- When this unit and monitor are connected with an HDMI cable, if the monitor is not compatible with HDMI audio signal playback, only the video signals are output to the monitor.

NOTE

The audio signal from the HDMI output connector (sampling frequency, number of channels, etc.) may be limited by the HDMI audio specifications of the connected device regarding permissible inputs.

Connecting to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector

When an HDMI/DVI conversion cable (sold separately) is used, the HDMI video signals are converted to DVI signals, allowing connection to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector.

NOTE

- No sound is output when connected to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector. Make separate audio connections.
- Signals cannot be output to DVI-D devices that do not support HDCP.
- Depending on the combination of devices, the video signals may not be output.

Settings related to HDMI connections

Set as necessary. For details, see the respective reference pages.

Input Assign (👉 page 88)

Set this to change the HDMI input connector to which the input source is assigned.

HDMI Setup (👉 page 106)

Make settings for HDMI video/audio output.

- Auto Lip Sync
- HDMI Audio Out
- HDMI Control

NOTE

The audio signal input from the HDMI input connector can be output as an output signal from the HDMI output connector by setting the HDMI audio output destination to TV.

Audio signals input via the Analog/Coaxial/Optical input connectors cannot be output from the HDMI output connector.

Connecting a TV

- Select the connector to use and connect the device.
- For video connections, see “Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)” ([page 5](#)).
- For instructions on HDMI connections, see “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device” ([page 7](#)).



To listen to TV audio through this device, use the optical digital connection.

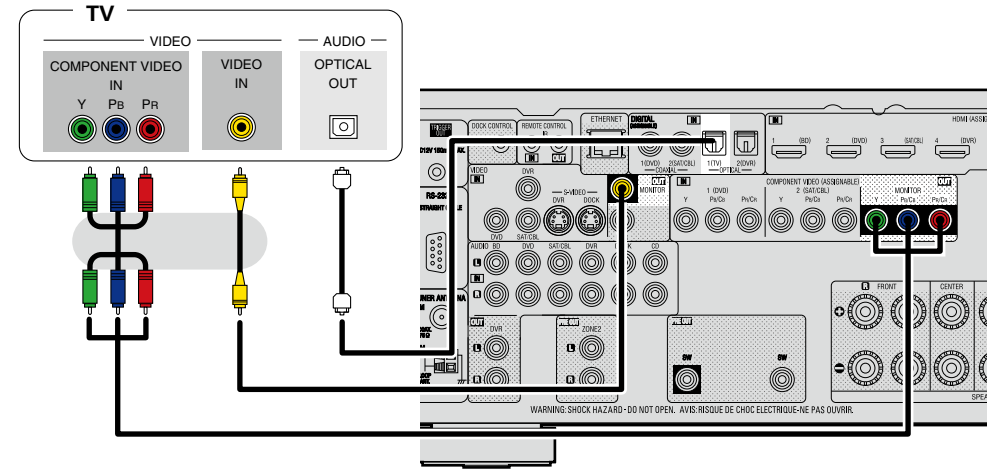
NOTE

The optical connection is not required when a TV compatible with the ARC function (Audio Return Channel) (HDMI 1.4a standard function) is connected to this unit via an HDMI connection.

For details, see “About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function” ([page 7](#)) or refer to the instruction manual for your TV.

Cables used for connections

| Video cable (sold separately) | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Video cable | |
| Component video cable | |
| | |
| | |
| Audio cable (sold separately) | |
| Optical cable | |



in Set as Necessary

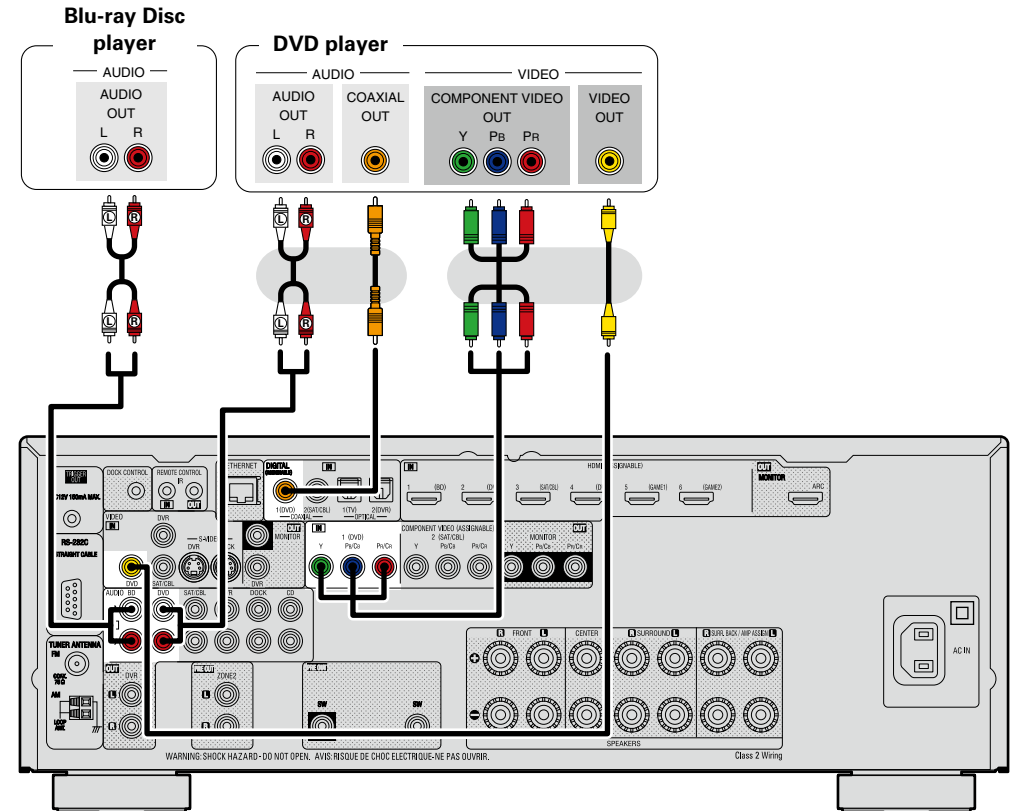
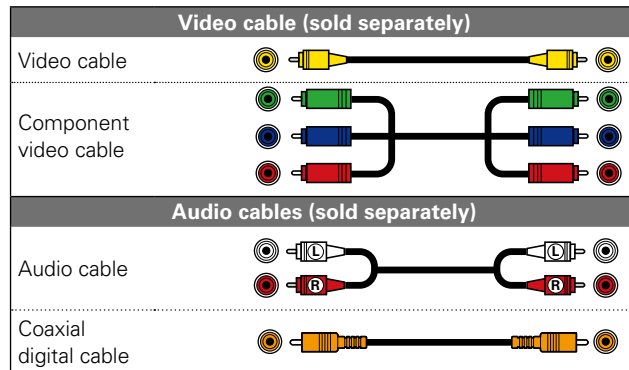
Set this to change the digital input connector or component video input connector to which the input source is assigned.

“Input Assign” ([page 88](#))

Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player

- You can enjoy video and audio from a Blu-ray Disc or DVD.
- Select the connector to use and connect the device.
- For instructions on HDMI connections, see “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device” ([page 7](#)).

Cables used for connections



In Set as Necessary

Set this to change the digital input connector or component video input connector to which the input source is assigned.

“Input Assign” ([page 88](#))

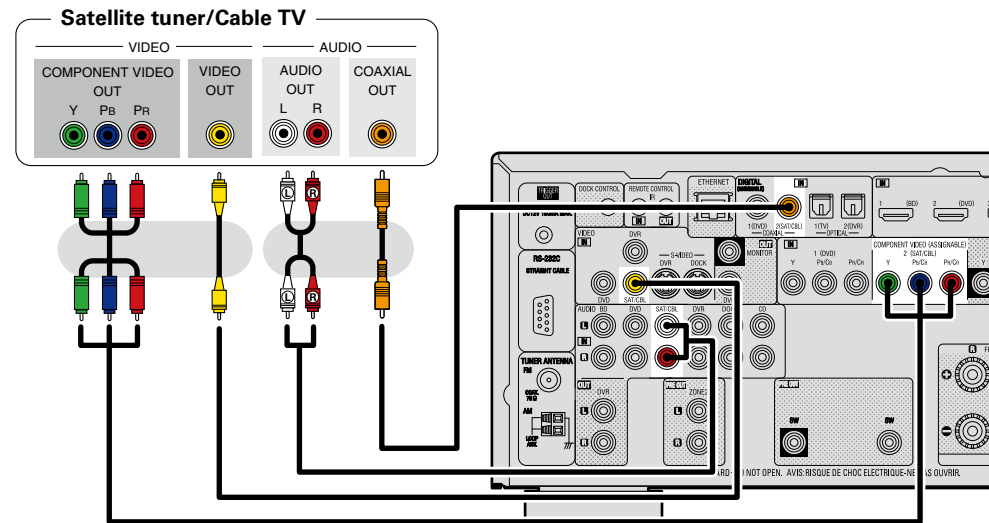
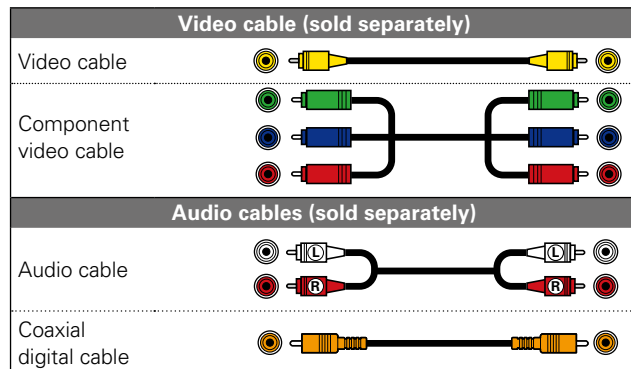


When you want to play back HD Audio (Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS Express) and Multi-channel PCM with this unit, use an HDMI connection ([page 7](#) “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device”).

Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)

- You can watch satellite or cable TV.
- Select the connector to use and connect the device.
- For instructions on HDMI connections, see “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device” ([page 7](#)).

Cables used for connections

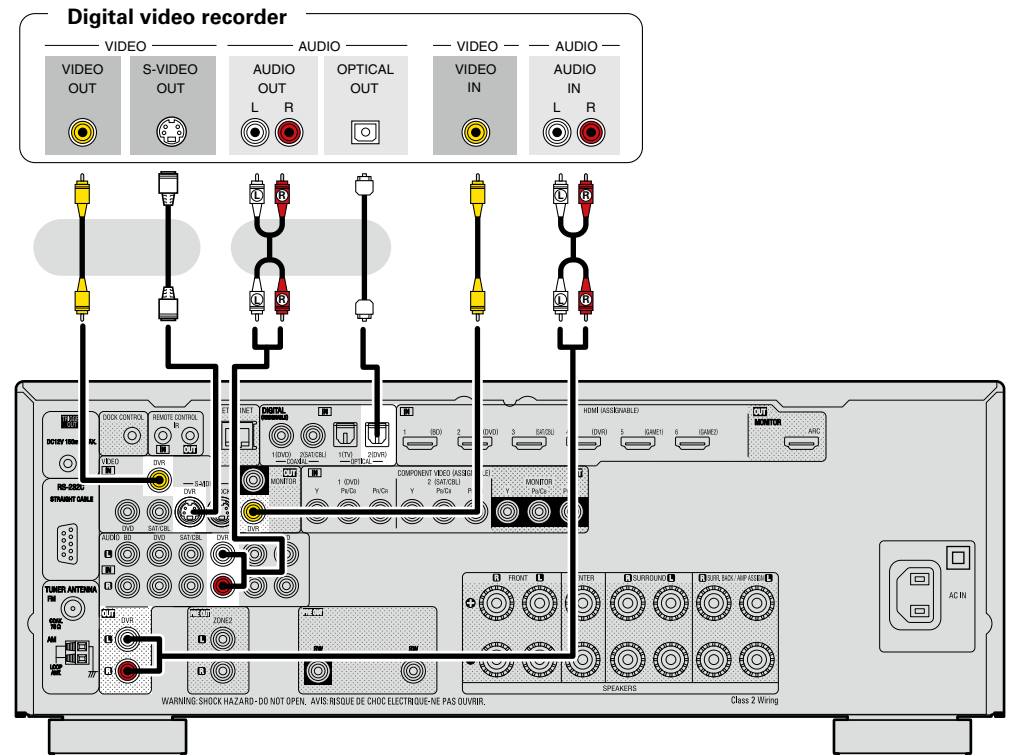


Connecting a digital video recorder

- You can record video onto a Blu-ray Disc or DVD.
- Select the connector to use and connect the device.
- When recording analog audio, use the analog connection.
- See “REC OUT mode” ([page 72](#)) for operating instructions.
- For instructions on HDMI connections, see “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device” ([page 7](#)).

Cables used for connections

| Video cable (sold separately) | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Video cable | |
| S-Video cable | |
| Audio cable (sold separately) | |
| Audio cable | |
| Optical cable | |



in Set as Necessary

Set this to change the digital input connector or component video input connector to which the input source is assigned.

“Input Assign” ([page 88](#))

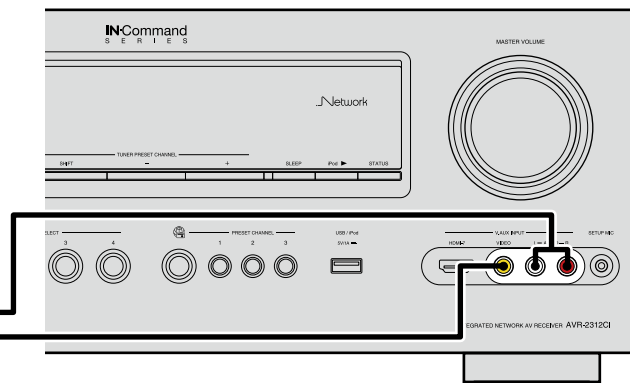
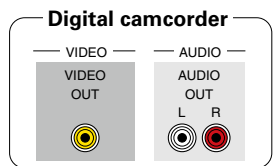
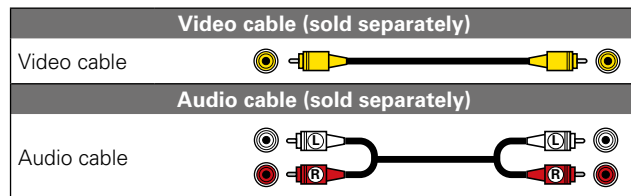
NOTE

To record video signals through this unit, use the video cable for connection between this unit and the player.

Connecting a digital camcorder

- You can enjoy video and audio from a digital camcorder.
- For instructions on HDMI connections, see “Connecting an HDMI-compatible device” (page 7).

Cables used for connections



in Set as Necessary

Set this to change the digital input connector or component video input connector to which the input source is assigned.

“Input Assign” (page 88)



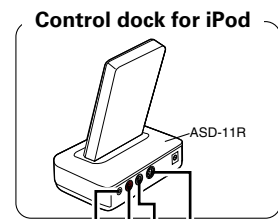
You can enjoy games by connecting a game machine via the V.AUX input connector. In this case, select the input source to “V.AUX”.

NOTE

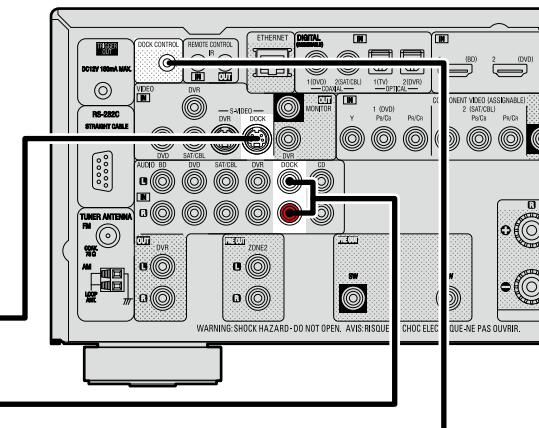
When a non-standard video signal from a game machine or some other source is input, the video conversion function might not operate. In this case, use the monitor output of the same connector as the input.

Connecting a control dock for iPod

- Connect a control dock for iPod to the unit to enjoy video and music stored on an iPod.
- For a control dock for iPod, use ASD-1R or ASD-11R made by DENON (sold separately).
- For instructions on the control dock for iPod settings, refer to the control dock for iPod’s operating instructions.



Use the AV/Control Cable supplied with the DENON control dock for iPod.

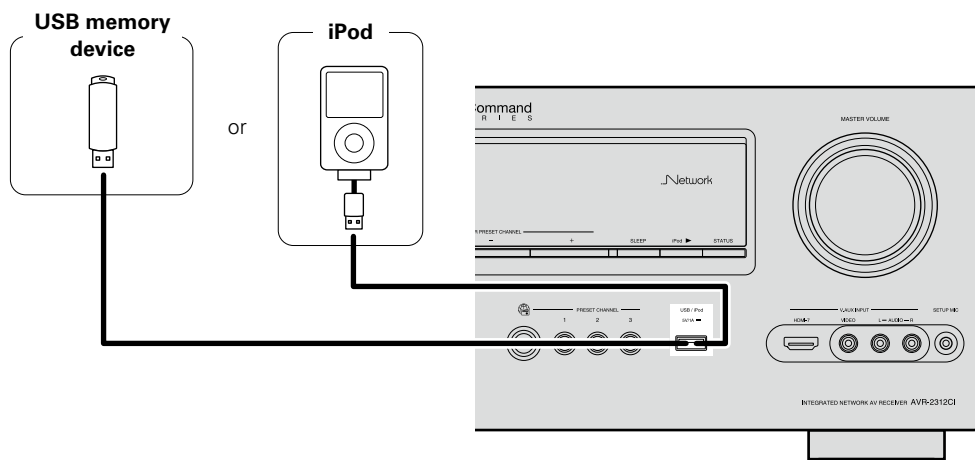


Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port

You can enjoy music stored on an iPod or USB memory device.

Cables used for connections

To connect an iPod to this unit, use the USB cable supplied with the iPod.



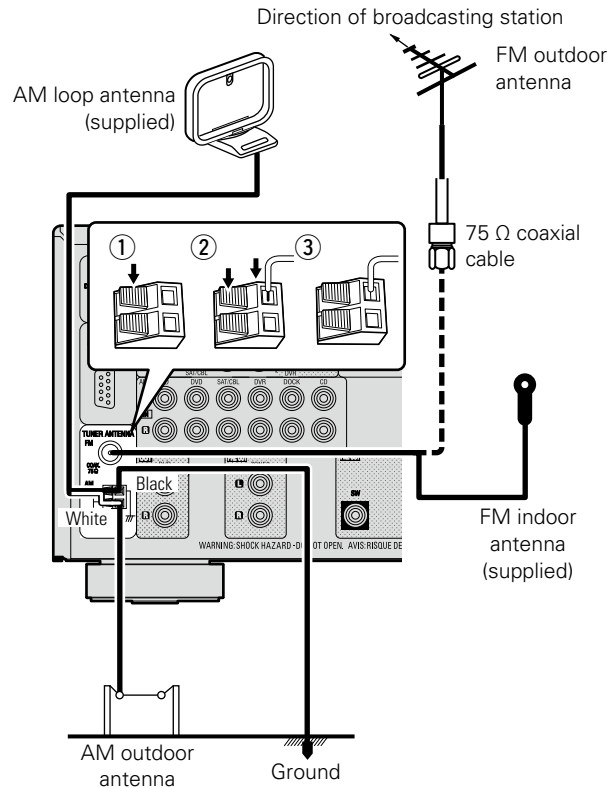
- When you want to play back a video file stored on an iPod, use a DENON control dock for iPod (ASD-1R and ASD-11R, sold separately) ([see page 14](#) "Connecting a control dock for iPod").
- With iPods, playback is possible with iPhone, iPod touch, classic and nano released from the 5th-generation of iPods. For details, check [page 31](#).
- DENON does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. When using a portable USB connection type HDD of the kind to which an AC adapter can be connected to supply power, use the AC adapter.

NOTE

- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- Do not use an extension cable when connecting a USB memory device. This may cause radio interference with other devices.
- This unit does not support playback on an iPad. Do not connect an iPad to the unit.
- When connecting an iPhone to this unit, keep the iPhone at least 20 cm away from this unit. If the iPhone is kept closer to this unit and a telephone call is received by the iPhone, noise may be output from this device.

Connecting an antenna

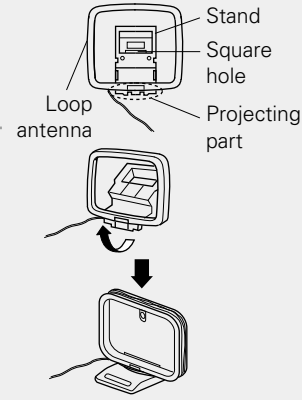
- Connect the FM antenna or AM loop antenna supplied with the unit to enjoy listening to radio broadcasts.
- After connecting the antenna and receiving a broadcast signal (page 33 "Listening to FM/AM broadcasts"), fix the antenna with tape in a position where the noise level becomes minimal.



AM loop antenna assembly

1 Put the stand section through the bottom of the loop antenna from the rear and bend it forward.

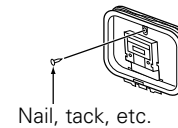
2 Insert the projecting part into the square hole in the stand.



Using the AM loop antenna

Suspending on a wall

Suspend directly on a wall without assembling.



Standing alone

Use the procedure shown above to assemble.

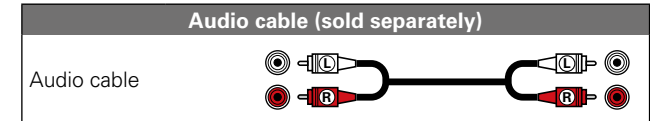
NOTE

- Do not connect two FM antennas simultaneously.
- Even if an external AM antenna is used, do not disconnect the AM loop antenna.
- Make sure the AM loop antenna lead terminals do not touch metal parts of the panel.
- If the signal has noise interference, connect the ground terminal (GND) to reduce noise.
- If you are unable to receive a good broadcast signal, we recommend installing an outdoor antenna. For details, inquire at the retail store where you purchased the unit.

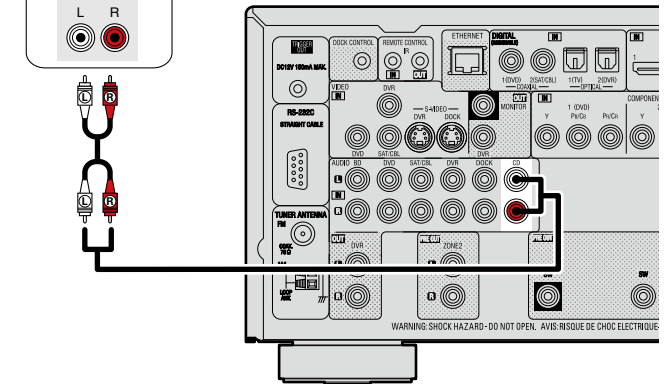
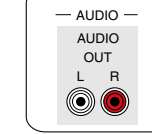
Connecting a CD player

- You can enjoy CD sound.
- Select the connector to use and connect the device.

Cables used for connections



CD player



in Set as Necessary

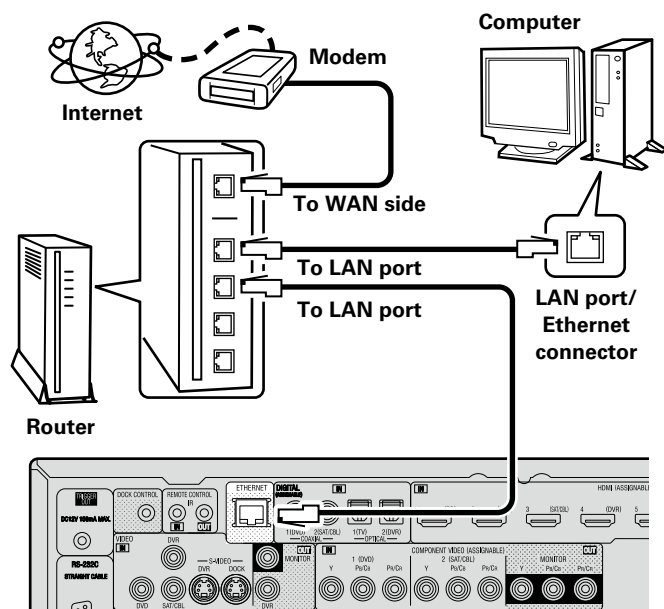
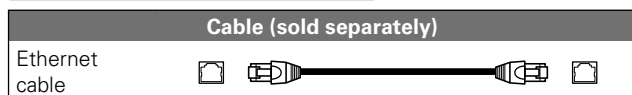
Set this to change the digital input connector to which the input source is assigned.

"Input Assign" (page 88)

Connecting to a home network (LAN)

- This unit lets you play via your home network (LAN) music files stored on a computer and music content such as that from Internet radio.
You can also operate this unit from a computer using the Web control function.
- You can update by downloading the latest firmware from the DENON website.
For more information, on the menu, select "Firmware Update" ([page 115](#)).
- See "Network Setup" on the menu ([page 108](#)) for more information on network setting.

Cables used for connections



For connections to the Internet, contact an ISP (Internet Service Provider) or a computer shop.

Required system

❑ Broadband internet connection

❑ Modem

Device that connects to the broadband circuit and conducts communications on the Internet.

A type that is integrated with a router is also available.

❑ Router

When using this unit, we recommend you use a router equipped with the following functions:

- Built-in DHCP server
This function automatically assigns IP addresses on the LAN.
- Built-in 100BASE-TX switch

When connecting multiple devices, we recommend a switching hub with a speed of 100 Mbps or greater.

❑ Ethernet cable (CAT-5 or greater recommended)

- Use only a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable which is available at retailer.
- Some flat type Ethernet cables are easily affected by noise.
We recommend using a normal type cable.



- If you have an Internet provider contract for a line on which network settings are made manually, make the settings at "Network Setup" ([page 108](#)).
- With this unit, it is possible to use the DHCP and Auto IP functions to make the network settings automatically.
- When using this unit with the broadband router's DHCP function enabled, this unit automatically performs the IP address setting and other settings.
When using this unit connected to a network with no DHCP function, make the settings for the IP address, etc., at "Network Setup" ([page 108](#)).
- When setting manually, check the setting contents with the network administrator.

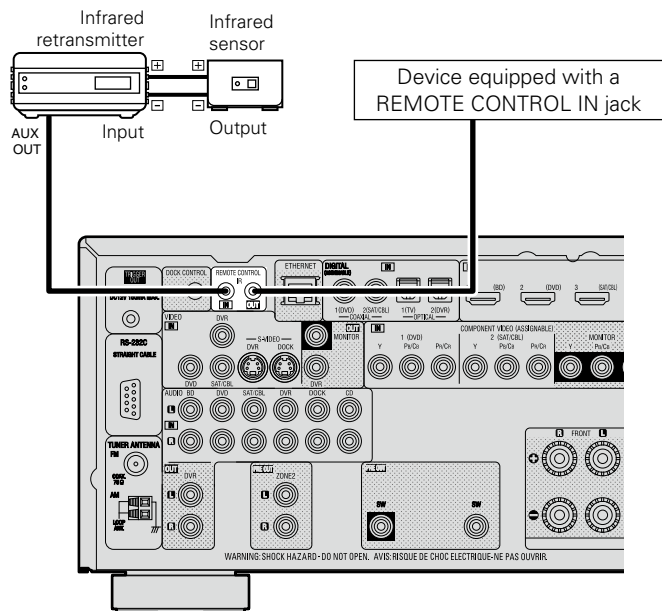
NOTE

- A contract with an ISP is required to connect to the Internet.
No additional contract is needed if you already have a broadband connection to the Internet.
- The types of routers that can be used depend on the ISP. Contact an ISP or a computer shop for details.
- DENON assumes no responsibility whatsoever for any communication errors or troubles resulting from customer's network environment or connected devices.
- This unit is not compatible with PPPoE. A PPPoE-compatible router is required if you have a contract for a type of line set by PPPoE.
- Do not connect an ETHERNET connector directly to the LAN port/Ethernet connector on your computer.
- To listen to audio streaming, use a router that supports audio streaming.

Connecting an external control device

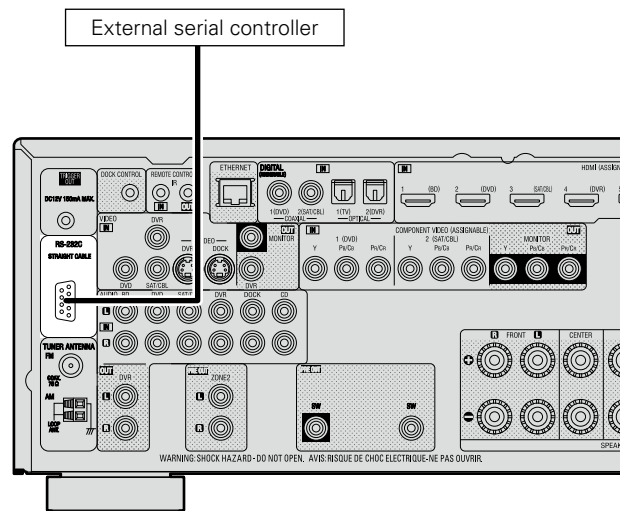
REMOTE CONTROL jacks

If this unit is installed in a location that is out of range of the signal from the remote control unit, you can still operate the unit and the devices connected to it by using a commercially available IR receiver. You can also use it to remotely control ZONE2 (another room).



RS-232C connector

When you connect an external control device, you can control this unit with the external control device.



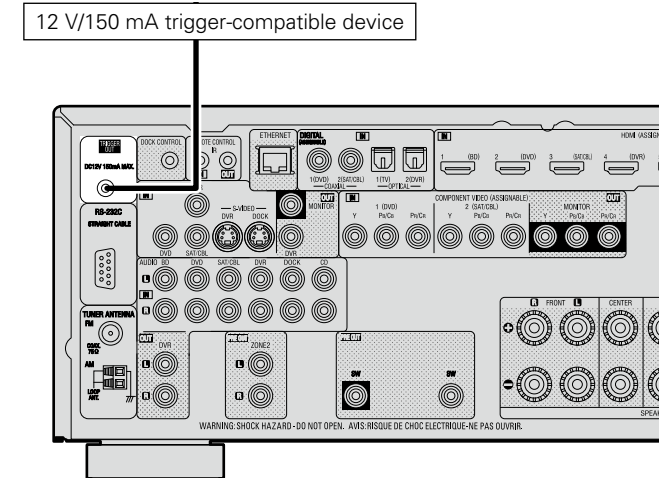
Perform the operation below beforehand.

- ① Turn on the power of this unit.
- ② Turn off the power of this unit from the external controller.
- ③ Check that the unit is in the standby mode.

TRIGGER OUT jacks

When a device with TRIGGER IN jack is connected, the connected device's power on/standby can be controlled through linked operation to this unit.

The TRIGGER OUT jack outputs a maximum 12 V/150 mA electrical signal.



in Set as Necessary

Set to change the conditions for linked operation via the TRIGGER OUT jack.

"Trigger Out" (page 114)

NOTE

- Use the monaural mini-plug cable for connecting TRIGGER OUT jacks. Do not use the stereo mini-plug cable.
- If the permissible trigger input level for the connected device is larger than 12 V/150 mA, or has shorted, the TRIGGER OUT jack cannot be used. In this case, turn off the power to the unit, and disconnect it.

Settings

Here, we explain “Audyssey® Auto Setup”, which allows you to automatically make the optimal settings for your speakers, and “Network Setup”, which allows you to connect this unit to a home network (LAN).

This unit lets you play via your home network (LAN) music files stored on a computer and music content such as that from Internet radio.

❑ Set up speakers (Audyssey® Auto Setup)

(👉 [page 19](#))

❑ Making the network settings (Network Setup)

(👉 [page 25](#))

Playback (Basic operation) (👉 [page 26](#))

Selecting a listening mode (SURROUND MODE)

(👉 [page 52](#))

Playback (Advanced operation) (👉 [page 68](#))



Set up speakers (Audyssey® Auto Setup)



The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically. This is called “Audyssey® Auto Setup”.

To perform measurement, place the setup microphone in multiple locations all around the listening area. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).

- When performing Audyssey® Auto Setup, Audyssey MultEQ® XT/Audyssey Dynamic EQ®/Audyssey Dynamic Volume® functions become active (👉 [page 98](#)).
- To set up the speakers manually, use “Speaker Setup” (👉 [page 102](#)) on the menu.

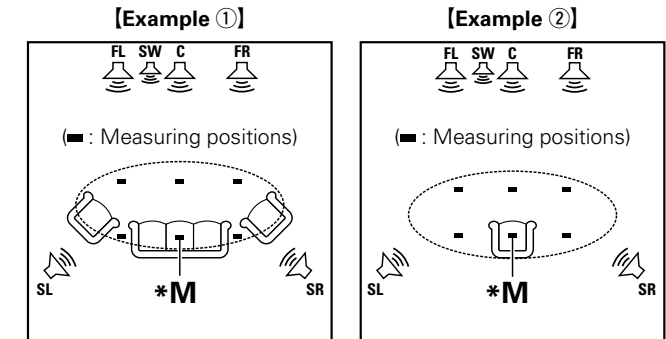
NOTE

- Make the room as quiet as possible. Background noise can disrupt the room measurements. Close windows, silence cell phones, televisions, radios, air conditioners, fluorescent lights, home appliances, light dimmers, or other devices as measurements may be affected by these sounds.
- Cell phones should be placed away from all audio electronics during the measurement process as Radio Frequency Interference (RFI) may cause measurement disruptions (even if the cell phone is not in use).
- Do not unplug the setup microphone from the main unit until Audyssey® Auto Setup is completed.
- Do not stand between the speakers and setup microphone or allow obstacles in the path while the measurements are being made. This will cause inaccurate readings.
- Loud test sounds may be played during Audyssey® Auto setup. This is part of normal operation. If there is background noise in room, these test signals will increase in volume.
- Operating (🔊)▲▼ during the measurements will cancel the measurements.
- Measurement cannot be performed when headphones are connected.



About setup microphone placement

- Measurements are performed by placing the setup microphone successively at multiple positions throughout the entire listening area, as shown in [Example ①]. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).
- Even if the listening environment is small as shown in [Example ②], measuring at multiple points throughout the listening environment results in more effective correction.



- | | | | |
|----|-------------------|----|----------------------|
| FL | Front speaker (L) | SW | Subwoofer |
| FR | Front speaker (R) | SL | Surround speaker (L) |
| C | Center speaker | SR | Surround speaker (R) |

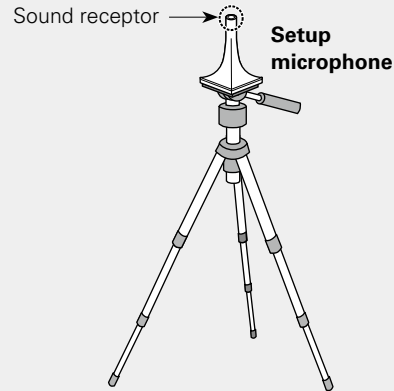
About the main listening position (*M)

The main listening position is the position where listeners would normally sit or where one would normally sit alone within the listening environment. Before starting Audyssey® Auto Setup, place the setup microphone in the main listening position. Audyssey MultEQ® XT uses the measurements from this position to calculate speaker distance, level, polarity, and the optimum crossover value for the subwoofer.

1 Set up the microphone

Mount the setup microphone on a tripod or stand and place it in the main listening position.

When placing the setup microphone, adjust the height of the sound receptor to the level of the listener's ear.



If you do not have a tripod or stand, set up the microphone on, for example, a seat without a back.

NOTE

- Do not hold the setup microphone in your hand during measurements.
- Avoid placing the setup microphone close to a seat back or wall as sound reflections may give inaccurate results.

2 Set up the subwoofer

If using a subwoofer capable of the following adjustments, set up the subwoofer as shown below.

❑ When using a subwoofer with a direct mode

Set the direct mode to "On" and disable the volume adjustment and crossover frequency setting.

❑ When using a subwoofer without a direct mode

Make the following settings:

- **Volume** : "12 o'clock position"
- **Crossover frequency** : "Maximum/Highest Frequency"
- **Low pass filter** : "Off"
- **Standby mode** : "Off"

NOTE

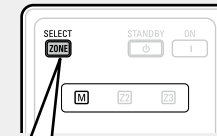
When you use two subwoofers, please adjust the subwoofer volume controls individually so that each subwoofer level is as close as possible to 75 dB using the test tone ([page 104](#)) before Audyssey® Auto Setup.

3 Set up the remote control unit

❑ Set up the zone mode

Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch the zone mode to **M (MAIN ZONE)**.

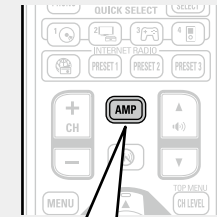
The **M** indicator lights.



Press ZONE SELECT

❑ Set up the operation mode

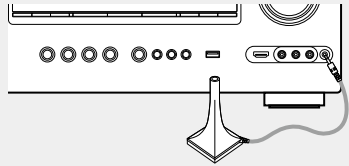
Press **AMP** to set the remote control unit to **AMP-operation mode**.



Press AMP

STEP 1 Preparation

4 Connect the setup microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.



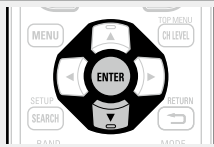
When the setup microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.



Here, we explain setup using the example of 5.1-channel speaker playback.

For settings other than 5.1-channel surround, select "Amp Assign" and perform step 4 and 5 of "Set up "Amp Assign"" (page 65). If unused channels are set with "Channel Select", measuring time can be shortened. For setting, perform steps 6 to 11 of "Set up "Channel Select"" (page 66).

5 Use ∇ to select "Auto Setup Start" and then press ENTER.



STEP 2 Detection & Measurement (Main)

- In STEP 2, you will perform measurements at the main listening position.
- This step automatically checks the speaker configuration and speaker size, and calculates the channel level, distance, and crossover frequency. It also corrects distortion in the listening area.

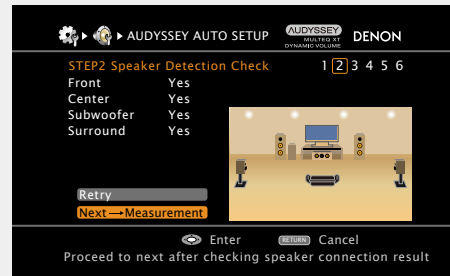
6 Select "Measure" and then press ENTER.

When measuring begins, a test tone is output from each speaker.

- Measurement requires several minutes.

7 The detected speakers are displayed.

- The illustration below shows an example of when the front speakers, center speaker, subwoofer, and surround speakers have been detected.



NOTE

If a connected speaker is not displayed, the speaker may not be connected correctly. Check the speaker connection.

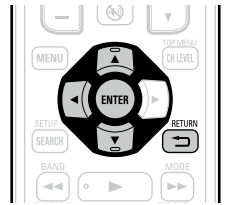
8 Use ∇ to select "Next → Measurement" and then press ENTER.

NOTE

If "Caution!" is displayed:

Go to "Error messages" (page 24), check any related items, and perform the necessary procedures.

If the problem is resolved, return and restart "Audyssey® Auto Setup".



When performing Audyssey® Auto Setup over again

Press $\Delta\nabla$ to select "Retry", and then press ENTER.

When measuring has stopped

- Press RETURN \leftarrow to the "Cancel auto setup?" prompt is displayed.
- Press \leftarrow to select "Yes", then press ENTER.

Setting up the speakers again

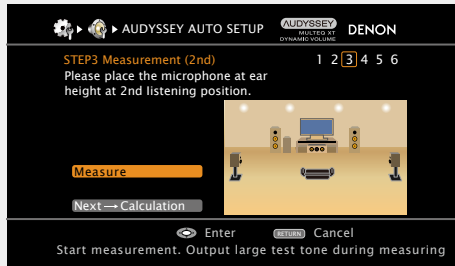
Repeat the operation from step 4 of **STEP 1 Preparation**.

STEP 3 Measurement (2nd – 8th)

- In STEP 3, you will perform measurements at multiple positions (two to eight positions) other than the main listening position.
- Just one position can be measured but measuring multiple positions increases the accuracy of the correction of acoustic distortion within the listening area.

9 Move the setup microphone to position 2, use Δ / ∇ to select “Measure”, and then press ENTER.

The measurement of the second position starts. Measurements can be made in up to eight positions.

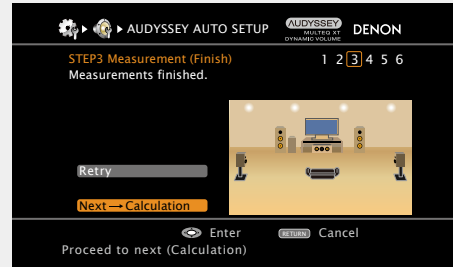


If you want to omit measurements from the next position onward, select “Next → Calculation”.
(Go to **STEP4 Calculation** →)

STEP 4 Calculation

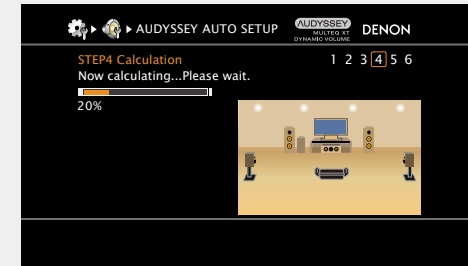
10 Repeat step 9, measuring positions 3 to 8.

When measurement of position 8 is completed, a “Measurements finished.” message is displayed.



11 On the **STEP 3** screen, use Δ / ∇ to select “Next → Calculation”, and then press ENTER.

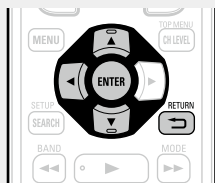
Measuring results are analyzed, and the frequency response of each speaker in the listening room is determined.



- Analysis takes several minutes to complete. The time required for this analysis depends on the number of speakers connected. The more connected speakers there are, the longer it takes to perform analysis.

STEP 5 Check

12 Use Δ / ∇ to select the item you want to check, and then press **ENTER**.



- Subwoofers may measure a greater reported distance than the actual distance due to added electrical delay common in subwoofers.
- If you want to check another item, press **RETURN** \leftarrow .

13 Use ∇ to select “Next \rightarrow Store” and then press **ENTER**.

NOTE

- If the result differs from the actual connection status, or if “Caution!” is displayed, see “Error messages” ([page 24](#)). Then carry out Audyssey® Auto Setup again.
- If you change speaker positions or orientation, perform Audyssey® Auto Setup again to find the optimal equalizer settings.

STEP 6 Store

14 Select “Store” and then press **ENTER**.
Save the measurement results.



- Saving the results requires about 10 seconds.
- If the measuring results are not to be saved, press **RETURN** \leftarrow . A message “Cancel auto setup?” will be displayed. Press \leftarrow then select “Yes”. All the measured Audyssey® Auto Setup data will be erased.
- During saving of measurements results, “Now storing...Please wait.” is displayed. When saving is completed, “Storing complete. Auto Setup is now finished.” is displayed.

NOTE

During saving of measurement results, be sure not to turn off the power.

Finish

15 Unplug the setup microphone from the unit’s **SETUP MIC** jack.

16 Set Audyssey Dynamic Volume®.



- This feature adjusts the output volume to the optimal level while constantly monitoring the level of the audio input to the unit. Optimal volume control is performed automatically without any loss in the dynamism and clarity of the sound when, for example, the volume suddenly increases for commercials shown during television programs.

□ When turning Dynamic Volume® on

- Use Δ to select “Yes”, and then press **ENTER**. The unit automatically enters “Evening” mode.

□ When turning Dynamic Volume® off

- Use ∇ to select “No”, and then press **ENTER**.

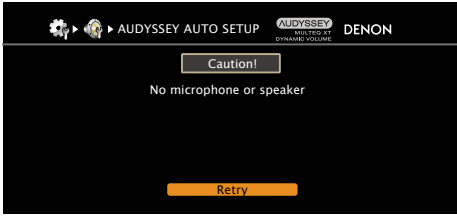
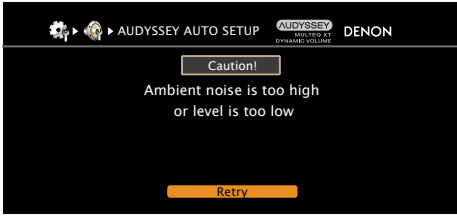


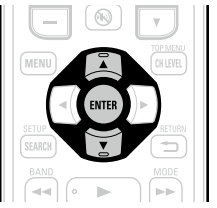
NOTE

After performing Audyssey® Auto Setup, do not change the speaker connections or subwoofer volume. In event of a change, perform Audyssey® Auto Setup again.

Error messages

NOTE

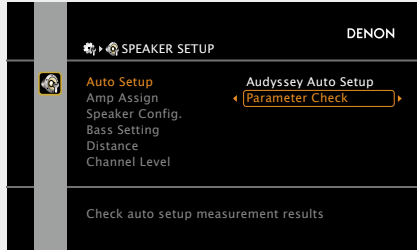
- An error message is displayed if Audyssey® Auto Setup could not be completed due to speaker placement, the measurement environment, etc. If this happens, check the relevant items, be sure to take the necessary measures, then perform Audyssey® Auto Setup over again.
- If the result still differs from the actual connection status after remeasurement or the error message still appears, it is possible that the speakers are not connected properly. Turn this unit off, check the speaker connections and repeat the measurement process from the beginning.
- Be sure to turn off the power before checking speaker connections.

| Examples | Error details | Measures |
|---|---|--|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The connected setup microphone is broken, or a device other than the supplied setup microphone is connected. • Not all speakers could be detected. • The front L speaker was not properly detected. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect the included setup microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit. • Check the speaker connections. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is too much noise in the room for accurate measurements to be made. • Speaker or subwoofer sound is too low for accurate measurements to be made. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Either turn off any device generating noise or move it away. • Perform again when the surroundings are quieter. • Check the speaker installation and the direction in which the speakers are facing. • Adjust the subwoofer's volume. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The displayed speaker could not be detected. (The screen on the left indicates that the front right speaker cannot be detected.) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the connections of the displayed speaker. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The displayed speaker is connected with the polarity reversed. (The screen on the left indicates that the polarity phases of the front right speakers are reversed.) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the polarity of the displayed speaker. • For some speakers, this error message may be displayed even if the speaker is properly connected. If you are sure the connection is correct, press $\Delta \nabla$ to select "Skip", then press ENTER.  |

Parameter Check

This function enables you to check the measurement results and equalizer characteristics after Audyssey® Auto Setup.


1 Use Δ / ∇ to select “Parameter Check” and then press **ENTER**.



2 Use Δ / ∇ to select the item you want to check, then press **ENTER** or \triangleright .
Measurement results for each speaker are displayed.

- Speaker Config. Check** Check the speaker configuration.
- Distance Check** Check the distance.
- Channel Level Check** Check the channel level.
- Crossover Freq. Check** Check the crossover frequency.
- EQ Check** Check the equalizer.

- If “EQ Check” is selected, press Δ / ∇ to select equalizing curve (“Audyssey” or “Audyssey Flat”) to be checked.
Use Δ / ∇ to switch the display between the different speakers.

3 Press **RETURN** .
The confirmation screen reappears. Repeat step 2.

Retrieving Audyssey® Auto Setup settings

If you set “Restore” to “Yes”, you can return to Audyssey® Auto Setup measurement result (value calculated at the start by MultEQ® XT) even when you have changed each setting manually.



Making the network settings (Network Setup)




This unit can be connected to a home network (LAN) to listen to Internet radio or play back music files and still image (JPEG) files stored on a computer.

1 Connect the Ethernet cable ( [page 17](#) “Connecting to a home network (LAN)”).

2 Turn on this unit ( [page 5](#) “Getting Started”).

This unit performs automatic network setup due to the DHCP function.

When connecting to a network that has no DHCP function, perform the setting in “Network Connecting” ( [page 108](#)).

Playback (Basic operation)

Settings (👉 page 19)

- ❑ **Selecting the input source** (👉 page 26)
- ❑ **Adjusting the master volume** (👉 page 27)
- ❑ **Turning off the sound temporarily** (👉 page 27)

- ❑ **Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player** (👉 page 28)
- ❑ **Playing a CD player** (👉 page 28)
- ❑ **Playing an iPod** (👉 page 29)
- ❑ **Tuning in radio stations** (👉 page 33)
- ❑ **Playing a network audio** (👉 page 35)
- ❑ **Playing a USB memory device** (👉 page 50)

Selecting a listening mode (SURROUND MODE) (👉 page 52)

Playback (Advanced operation) (👉 page 68)

Important information

Before starting playback, make the connections between the different devices and the settings on the unit.

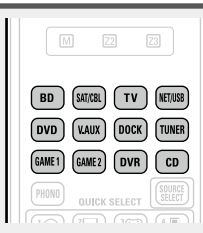
NOTE

Also refer to the operating instructions of the connected devices when playing them.

Selecting the input source

Press the input source select button (BD, SAT/CBL, TV, NET/USB, DVD, V.AUX, DOCK, TUNER, GAME1, GAME2, DVR or CD) to be played back.

The desired input source can be selected directly.

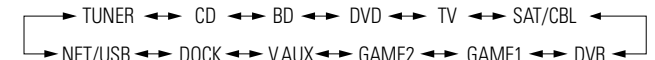


You can also use the following operation to select an input source.

❑ Using the knob on the main unit

Turn **SOURCE SELECT**.

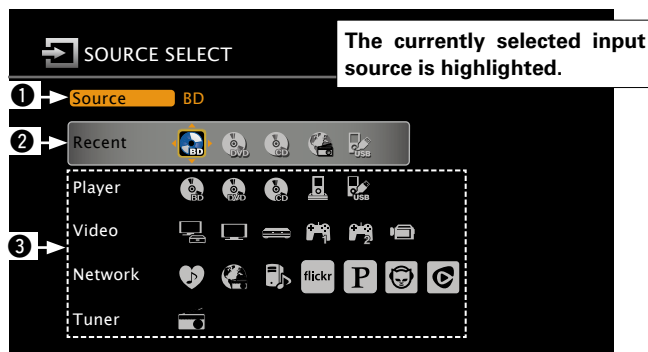
- Turning **SOURCE SELECT** switches the input source, as shown below.



- When **iPod** ► on the main unit is pressed, the input source of this unit is switched to "DOCK" or "NET/USB" and the connected iPod is automatically played (👉 page 32 "iPod play function").

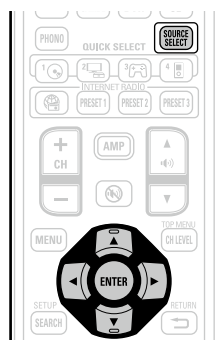
Using the "SOURCE SELECT" menu

Switch the remote control unit to the **M** (MAIN ZONE) mode when performing this operation (see page 118 "Operating AV devices"). If the remote control unit is in **Z2** (ZONE2) mode, the "SOURCE SELECT" menu will not be displayed when **SOURCE SELECT** is pressed.



- 1 **Input Source**
The name of the highlighted input source is displayed.
- 2 **Recently used sources**
The recently used input sources (up to five) are displayed.
- 3 **Icons for the input sources in the different categories are displayed.**

- 1 Press **SOURCE SELECT**.
Display the "SOURCE SELECT" menu.
- 2 Use **Δ** **▽** **◀** **▶** to select the input source, then press **ENTER**.
The input source is set and the source selection menu is turned off.

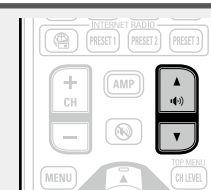


- When using with an iPod connected directly to the USB port of this unit, select "USB (USB/iPod)" for the input source.
- Input sources that are not going to be used can be set ahead of time. Make this setting at "Source Delete" (see page 113).
- To turn off the source selection menu without selecting an input source, press **SOURCE SELECT** again.
- When **SOURCE SELECT** is pressed, the AMP-operation mode starts automatically (see page 118).

Adjusting the master volume

Use **🔊** **▲** **▼** to adjust the volume.

- ❑ When the "Volume Display" setting (see page 113) is "Relative" [Adjustable range] --- -80.5dB - 18.0dB



- ❑ When the "Volume Display" setting (see page 113) is "Absolute" [Adjustable range] 0.0 - 99.0

- The variable range differs according to the input signal and channel level setting.



You can also operate via the main unit. In this case, perform the following operations.
Turn **MASTER VOLUME** to adjust the volume.

Turning off the sound temporarily

Press **🔇**.

- The power indicator flashes green.
- "MUTE" indicator on the display lights.
- **🔇** appears on a TV screen.



- The sound is reduced to the level set at "Mute Level" (see page 113).
- To cancel, press **🔇** again. Muting can also be canceled by adjusting the master volume.

Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player

The following describes the procedure for playing Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player.

1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Turn on the power of the TV, subwoofer and player.
- ② Change the TV input to the input of this unit.
- ③ Load the disc in the player.



2 Press ON to turn on power to the unit.

3 Press BD or DVD to switch an input source for a playback.

4 Play the device connected to this unit.

Make the necessary settings on the player (language setting, subtitles setting, etc.) beforehand.

Playing a CD player

The following describes the procedure for playing CD player.

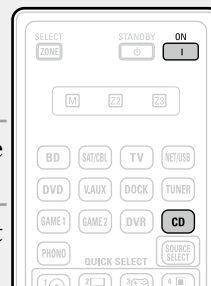
1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Turn on the power of the subwoofer and player.
- ② Load the disc in the player.

2 Press ON to turn on power to the unit.

3 Press CD to switch the input source to the CD player.

4 Play the device connected to this unit.



Playing an iPod

There are two methods for iPod playback.

- ① **Use a DENON control dock for iPod to play back.**
You can play back both video, photo and audio.
- ② **Connect an iPod directly to the USB port to play back** (page 31).
You can play back audio only.

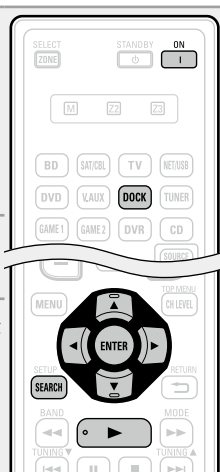
① Use a DENON control dock for iPod to play back

If you use a separately sold DENON control dock for iPod (ASD-1R or ASD-11R), you will be able to play back videos, photos, music, and other content on the iPod.

□ Listening to music on an iPod

1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Connect the DENON control dock for iPod to this unit (page 14 "Connecting a control dock for iPod").
- ② Set the iPod in the DENON control dock for iPod.



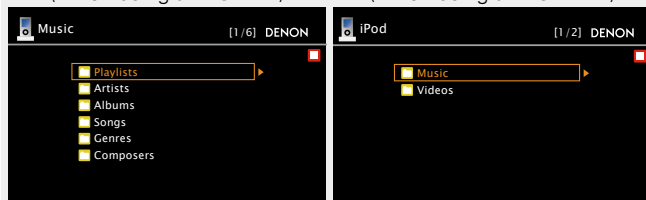
2 Press ON to turn on power to the unit.

3 Press DOCK to switch the input source to "DOCK".

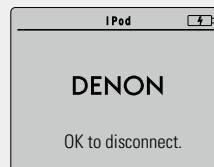
- If "Browse mode" is selected in step 4, the following screen is displayed on a TV screen, depending on the connected control dock for iPod.

(When using an ASD-1R)

(When using an ASD-11R)



- In "Browse mode", the iPod display is as shown at right.



NOTE

If the connections screen is not displayed, the iPod may not be properly connected. Reconnect it.

4 Press SEARCH and hold it down for 2 seconds or more to select the display mode.

- There are two modes for displaying the contents recorded on the iPod.

Browse mode Display iPod information on the TV screen.

- English letters, numbers and certain symbols are displayed. Incompatible characters are displayed as "." (period).

Remote mode Display iPod information on the iPod screen.

- "Remote iPod" is displayed on the display of this unit.

| Display mode | | Browse mode | Remote mode |
|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Playable files | Music file | ✓ | ✓ |
| | Photo file | | ✓ *2 |
| | Video file | ✓ *1 | ✓ *2 |
| Active buttons | Remote control unit (This unit) | ✓ | ✓ |
| | iPod | | ✓ |

*1 When using an ASD-11R DENON control dock for iPod.

*2 Video may not be output, depending on the combination of ASD-1R or ASD-11R DENON control dock for iPod and iPod.

5 Use Δ ∇ to select the item, then press ENTER or \triangleright to select the file to be played.

6 Press ENTER, \triangleright or \blacktriangleright . Playback starts.



- You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu "iPod" (page 114). Press Δ ∇ \triangleleft \triangleright to return to the original screen.
- To play back compressed audio with extended bass or treble reproduction, we recommend playback in RESTORER mode (page 99). The default setting is "Mode3".
- In Browse mode, press **STATUS** on the main unit during playback to check the title name, artist name, and album name on the display of this unit.

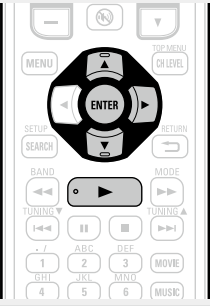
NOTE

- Press **STANDBY** and set this unit's power to the standby mode before disconnecting the iPod. You can also switch the input source to other than "DOCK" and then disconnect the iPod.
- Depending on the type of iPod and the software version, some functions may not operate.
- Note that DENON will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on an iPod when using this unit in conjunction with the iPod.



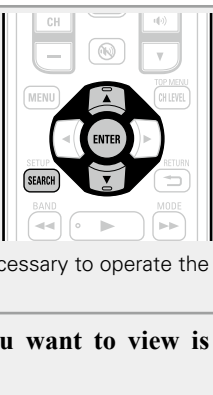
❑ Viewing videos on an iPod in the Browse mode

When an iPod equipped with a video function is connected to a DENON ASD-11R control dock for iPod, image files can be played in the Browse mode.

| | | |
|----------|--|---|
| 1 | Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select “Videos”, then press ENTER or \triangleright . |  |
| 2 | Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select the search item or folder, then press ENTER or \triangleright . | |
| 3 | Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select the video file, then press ENTER , \triangleright or \blacktriangleright . Playback starts. | |

❑ Viewing photos and videos on an iPod in the Remote mode

This unit can play back on a TV screen photos and data stored on an iPod equipped with a slide show or video function.

| | | |
|----------|---|---|
| 1 | Press and hold SEARCH to set the Remote mode. “Remote iPod” is displayed on the display of this unit. |  |
| 2 | Watching the iPod’s screen, use $\Delta \nabla$ to select “Photos” or “Videos”. | |
| 3 | Press ENTER until the image you want to view is displayed. | |

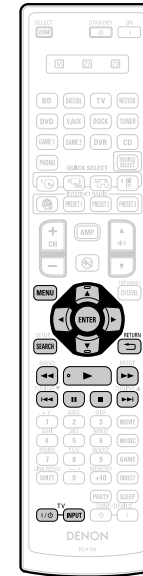


“TV Out” at the iPod’s “Slide show Settings” or “Video Settings” must be set to “On” in order to display the iPod’s photo data or videos on the monitor. For details, see the iPod’s operating instructions.

NOTE

Video may not be output, depending on the combination of ASD-1R or ASD-11R and iPod.

❑ iPod operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|---|---|
| MENU | Amp menu |
| $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ | Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, $\Delta \nabla$) / Manual search (Press and hold, $\Delta \nabla$) |
| ENTER (Press and release) | Enter / Pause |
| ENTER (Press and hold) | Stop |
| SEARCH (Press and release) | Page search mode* |
| SEARCH (Press and hold) | Browse / Remote mode switching |
| RETURN | Return |
| $\triangleleft \triangleleft \triangleright \triangleright$ (Press and hold) | Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward) |
| \blacktriangleright | Playback / Pause |
| $\blacktriangleleft \blacktriangleright$ | Auto search (cue) |
| II | Pause |
| ■ | Stop |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |

- Repeat playback (☞ page 92 “Repeat”)
- Shuffling playback (☞ page 92 “Shuffle”)

* When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH**, then press \triangleleft (previous page) or \triangleright (next page). To cancel, press $\Delta \nabla$ or **SEARCH**.

2 Connect an iPod directly to the USB port to play back

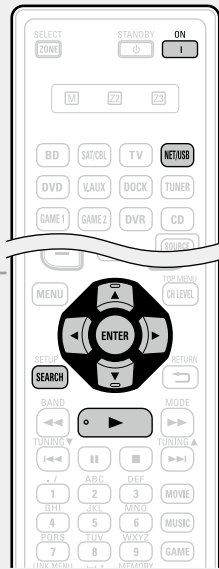
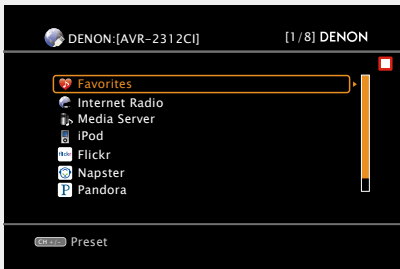
You can use the USB cable provided with the iPod to connect the iPod with the unit's USB port and enjoy music stored on the iPod.

- This unit supports audio playback from the iPod (fifth generation or later), iPod nano, iPod classic, iPod touch and iPhone (it is not compatible with iPod shuffle).

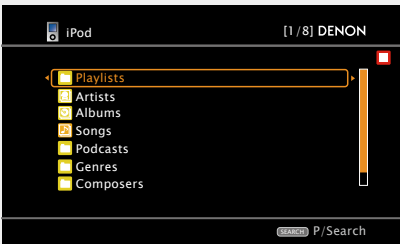
1 Connect the iPod to the USB port (see page 15 “Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port”).

2 Press ON to turn on power to the unit.

3 Press NET/USB to switch the input source to “NET/USB”.



4 Use Δ∇ to select “iPod”, then press ENTER or ▷.



NOTE

If the “iPod” is not displayed, the iPod may not be properly connected. Reconnect it.

5 Press SEARCH and hold it down for 2 seconds or more to select the display mode.

- There are two modes for displaying the contents recorded on the iPod.

Browse mode Display iPod information on the TV screen.

- English letters, numbers and certain symbols are displayed. Incompatible characters are displayed as “.” (period).

Remote mode Display iPod information on the iPod screen.

- “Remote iPod” is displayed on the display of this unit.
- The Remote mode is not supported on fifth generation iPod or first generation iPod nano.

| Display mode | | Browse mode | Remote mode |
|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Playable files | Music file | ✓ | ✓ |
| | Video file | | * |
| Active buttons | Remote control unit (This unit) | ✓ | ✓ |
| | iPod | | ✓ |

* Only the sound is played.

6 Use Δ∇ to select the item, then press ENTER or ▷ to select the file to be played.

7 Press ENTER, ▷ or ▶. Playback starts.



- You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu “iPod” (see page 114). Press Δ∇◁▷ to return to the original screen.
- To play back compressed audio with extended bass or treble reproduction, we recommend playback in RESTORER mode (see page 99). The default setting is “Mode3”.
- In Browse mode, press **STATUS** on the main unit during playback to check the title name, artist name, and album name.

NOTE

- Depending on the type of iPod and the software version, some functions may not operate.
- Note that DENON will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on an iPod when using this unit in conjunction with the iPod.

□ iPod operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| MENU | Amp menu |
| △▽◀▶ | Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, △▽) / Manual search (Press and hold, △▽) |
| ENTER (Press and release) | Enter / Pause |
| ENTER (Press and hold) | Stop |
| SEARCH (Press and release) | Page search*1 / Character sort*2 |
| SEARCH (Press and hold) | Browse / Remote mode switching |
| RETURN ↶ | Return |
| ◀▶▶▶ (Press and hold) | Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward) |
| ▶ | Playback / Pause |
| ◀◀▶▶ | Auto search (cue) |
| ⏸ | Pause |
| ■ | Stop |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |

- Repeat playback (🔗 page 92 "Repeat")
- Random playback (🔗 page 92 "Shuffle")

- *1 When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH**, then press ◀ (previous page) or ▶ (next page).
To cancel, press △▽ or **SEARCH** twice.
- *2 When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH** twice, then press ◀▶ to select the first letter you want to search mode.
• If it is not possible to search the list, "unsorted list." is displayed.
To cancel, press △▽ or **SEARCH**.



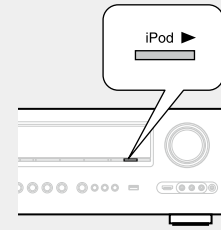
If the list is not in alphabetical order, you may not be able to perform a character sort.

iPod play function

If **iPod ▶** on the main unit is pressed when a control dock for iPod or an iPod (USB) is connected, the iPod starts playback.

Press iPod ▶.

- This unit's input source switches to "DOCK" or "NET/USB".
- iPod playback starts.



NOTE

If both a control dock for iPod ("DOCK") and an iPod ("NET/USB") are connected, playback with control dock for iPod ("DOCK") takes priority.

Tuning in radio stations

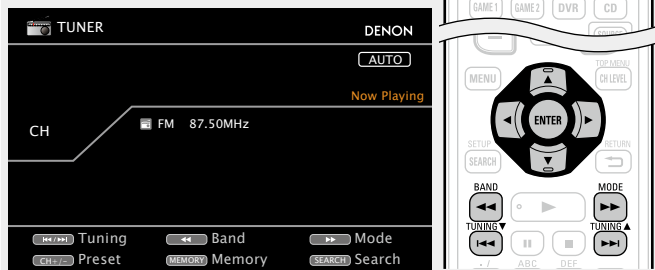
Listening to FM/AM broadcasts

1 Press **TUNER** to switch the input source to “TUNER”.

2 Press **BAND** to select “FM” or “AM”.

FM When listening to an FM broadcast.

AM When listening to an AM broadcast.



3 Tune in the desired broadcast station.

1 To tune in automatically (Auto tuning)

Press **MODE** to light the “AUTO” indicator on the display, then use **TUNING ▲** or **TUNING ▼** to select the station you want to hear.

2 To tune in manually (Manual tuning)

Press **MODE** to turn off the display’s “AUTO” indicator, then use **TUNING ▲** or **TUNING ▼** to select the station you want to hear.



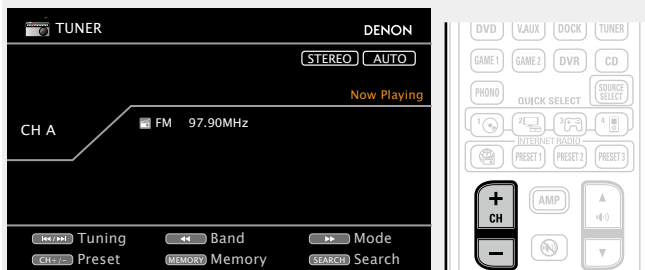
- If the desired station cannot be tuned in with auto tuning, tune it in manually.
- When tuning in stations manually, press and hold **TUNING ▲** or **TUNING ▼** to change frequencies continuously.
- The time (default : 30 sec) for which the menu are displayed can be set at menu “Tuner” ([page 114](#)). Press **▲▼◀▶** to return to the original screen.

❑ Presetting radio stations (Manual preset)

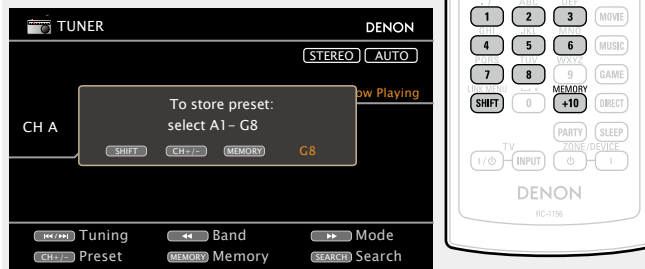
Your favorite broadcast stations can be preset so that you can tune them in easily. Up to 56 stations can be preset.

- Stations can be preset automatically at “Auto Preset” ([page 92](#)). If “Auto Preset” is performed after performing “Manual preset”, the “Manual preset” settings will be overwritten.

1 Tune in the broadcast station you want to preset.



2 Press **MEMORY**.



3 Press **SHIFT** to select the block (A to G) in which the channel (1 to 8 per a block) is to be preset, then press **CH +**, **CH -** or **1 - 8** to select the preset number.

4 Press **MEMORY** again to complete the setting.

- To preset other stations, repeat steps 1 to 4.

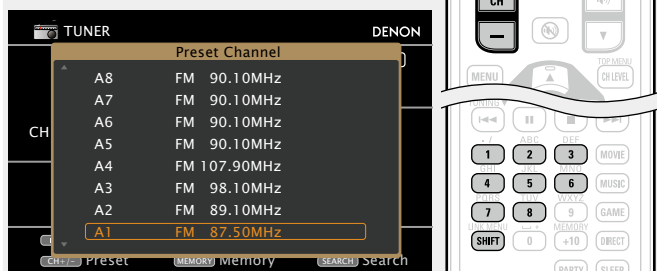
Default settings

| Block (A – G) and Channel (1 – 8) | Default Settings |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| A1 – A8 | 87.50 / 89.10 / 98.10 / 107.90 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 MHz |
| B1 – B8 | 520 / 600 / 1000 / 1400 / 1500 / 1710 kHz, 90.10 / 90.10 MHz |
| C1 – C8 | 90.10 MHz |
| D1 – D8 | 90.10 MHz |
| E1 – E8 | 90.10 MHz |
| F1 – F8 | 90.10 MHz |
| G1 – G8 | 90.10 MHz |

Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name) ([page 93](#))

Listening to preset stations

1 Press **SHIFT** to select the memory block (A to G).



2 Press **CH +**, **CH -** or **1 - 8** to select the desired preset channel.

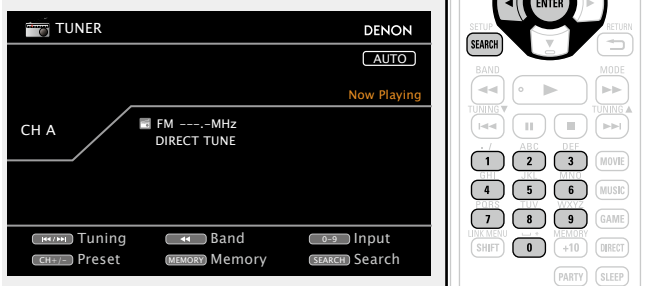


You can also operate via the main unit. In this case, perform the following operations.
Press **TUNER PRESET CH +** or **TUNER PRESET CH -** to select a preset radio station.

Direct frequency tuning

You can enter the receiving frequency directly to tune in.

1 Press **SEARCH**.



2 Input frequencies using the **0 - 9**.

- If **<** is pressed, the immediately preceding input is cancelled.

3 When setting is completed, press **ENTER**.
The preset frequency is tuned in.

Tuner (FM/AM) operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|-------------------|---|
| CH +, - | Preset channel selection |
| MENU | Amp menu |
| △▽◀▶ | Cursor operation |
| ENTER | Enter |
| SEARCH | Direct frequency tuning |
| RETURN | Return |
| BAND | FM/AM switching |
| MODE | Switch search modes |
| TUNING ▲▼ | Tuning (up/down) |
| 0 - 9 | Preset channel selection (1 - 8) / Direct frequency tuning (0 - 9) |
| SHIFT | Preset channel block selection |
| MEMORY | Preset memory registration |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |

Playing a network audio

Follow this procedure to play Internet radio stations or music or still picture (JPEG) files stored on a computer.

Important information

□ About the internet radio function

- Internet radio refers to radio broadcasts distributed over the Internet. Internet radio stations from around the world can be received.
- This unit is equipped with the following Internet radio functions:
 - Stations can be selected by genre and location.
 - Up to 56 Internet radio stations can be preset.
 - Internet radio stations in MP3 and WMA (Windows Media Audio) format can be listened to.
 - Your favorite radio stations can be registered by accessing an exclusive DENON Internet radio URL from a Web browser on a computer.
- The function is managed for individual users, so you must provide your MAC or e-mail address. Exclusive URL: <http://www.radiodenon.com>
- The radio station database service may be suspended without notice.
- This unit's Internet radio station list is created using a radio station database service (vTuner). This database service provides a list edited and created for this unit.

□ Media player

This function lets you play music files and playlists (m3u, wpl) stored on a computer (media server) connected to this unit via a network.

With this unit's network audio playback function, connection to the server is possible using one of the technologies below.

- Windows Media Player Network Sharing Service
- Windows Media DRM10

Album art function

When a WMA (Windows Media Audio), MP3 or MPEG-4 AAC file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while the music files are playing.



If you use Ver.11 or later of Windows Media Player, the album art for WMA files can be displayed.

Slide show function

You can play back image (JPEG) files that are stored in folders on a media server and photographs on Flickr as a slideshow. Also, you can set the time display that is shown during playback ([page 92](#)).

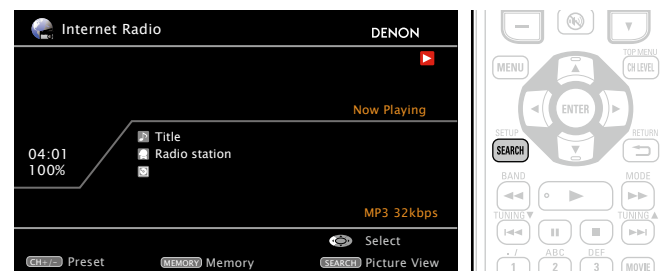


This unit plays back image (JPEG) files in the orientation in which they are stored in the folder.

□ Function that simultaneously plays back music and image files from the network

You can playback music and image files at the same time by playing back music files, and then playing back image files.

Also, when selecting music files after playing back image files, press **SEARCH** when the music playback screen is displayed. Music files and image files can be played back simultaneously. At this time, set "Slide Show" ([page 92](#)) in the menu to "ON".



Network contents that can be played back simultaneously are as follows.

- Music files: Favorites, Internet Radio, Media server, USB, iPod Browse Mode (NET/USB)
- Image files: Media server, USB, Flickr

[Compatible formats]

| | Internet radio | Media server *1 |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| WMA (Windows Media Audio) | ✓ | ✓ |
| MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3) | ✓ | ✓ |
| WAV | | ✓ |
| MPEG-4 AAC | | ✓*2 |
| FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec) | | ✓ |
| JPEG | | ✓ |

A server or server software compatible with distribution in the corresponding formats is required to play music files via a network.

*1 Media server

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- WAV format Quantization bit rate: 16 bits
- FLAC format Quantization bit rate: 16 or 24 bits

*2 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.

Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

[Compatible formats]

| | Sampling frequency | Bit rate | Extension |
|---|------------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| WMA (Windows Media Audio) | 32/44.1/48 kHz | 48 – 192 kbps | .wma |
| MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3) | 32/44.1/48 kHz | 32 – 320 kbps | .mp3 |
| WAV | 32/44.1/48 kHz | – | .wav |
| MPEG-4 AAC | 32/44.1/48 kHz | 16 – 320 kbps | .aac/ .m4a/ .mp4 |
| FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec) | 32/44.1/48/88.2/96 kHz | – | .flac |

□ About Flickr

Flickr is an online photograph sharing service that started in 2004. You can use the this unit to view photographs that have been made public by Flickr users. You do not need an account to use Flickr. To view photographs that you recorded yourself, you need an account in order to upload these photographs to the Flickr server. For details, see the Flickr homepage.

<http://www.flickr.com/>

□ About Napster

Napster is a monthly subscription music distribution service provided by Napster LLC. This service allows users to download and play pieces of music they want to hear on this unit. Before you can use Napster, you will need to visit the Napster website on your PC to create an account and register as a member. For details, access the following site:

http://www.napster.com/choose/index_default.html

□ About Pandora

Pandora is an automated music recommendation and Internet radio service created by the Music Genome Project.

When you first listen to Pandora, it is necessary to subscribe to a Pandora account at the Pandora homepage by your PC and register this machine. See the Pandora homepage for details.

<http://www.pandora.com/denon>

□ About Rhapsody

Rhapsody is a paid music broadcast service of RealNetworks.

When you first listen to Rhapsody, it is necessary to subscribe to a Rhapsody account at the Rhapsody homepage by your PC and register this machine. See the Rhapsody homepage for details.

<http://www.rhapsody.com/denon>


Listening to internet radio

1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (refer page 17 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
- ② If settings are required, make the "Network Connecting" (refer page 108).

2 Press NET/USB to switch the input source to "NET/USB".

3 Press Δ / ∇ to select "Internet Radio", then press ENTER or \triangleright .

- Selecting  in the "SOURCE SELECT" menu, lets you directly select "Internet Radio".

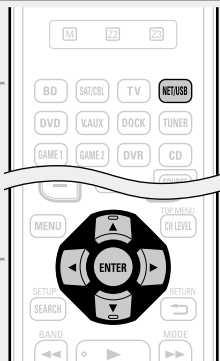
4 Press Δ / ∇ to select the item you want to play, then press ENTER or \triangleright .

5 Repeat step 4 until the station list is displayed.

The station list is displayed.


6 Press Δ / ∇ to select the station, then press ENTER or \triangleright .

Playback starts once buffering reaches "100%".



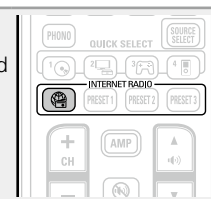
- There are many Internet radio stations on the Internet, and the quality of the programs they broadcast as well as the bit rate of the tracks varies widely. Generally, the higher the bit rate, the higher the sound quality, but depending on the communication lines and server traffic, the music or audio signals being streamed may be interrupted. Inversely, lower bit rates mean a lower sound quality but less tendency for the sound to be interrupted.
- "Server Full" or "Connection Down" is displayed if the station is busy or not broadcasting.
- On this unit, folder and file names can be displayed as titles. Any characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with "." (period).
- To play back compressed audio with extended bass or treble reproduction, we recommend playback in RESTORER mode (refer page 99). The default setting is "Mode3".
- You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu "NET/USB" (refer page 114). Press Δ / ∇ / \triangleright to return to the original screen.
- When **STATUS** on the main unit is pressed, the display can be switched between the title name and radio station name.



□ Playing the last played Internet radio station

Simply press **INTERNET RADIO**  on the main unit to switch the input source to "Internet Radio" and play the last played radio station.

Press **INTERNET RADIO** .

The source switches to "Internet Radio" and the last played radio station plays.



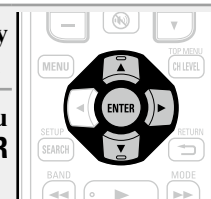
- If **INTERNET RADIO**  on the main unit is pressed, the same function as with the remote control unit can be obtained.
- When **INTERNET RADIO**  is pressed, the AMP-operation mode starts automatically (refer page 118).

□ Recently played internet radio stations

Recently played internet radio stations can be selected from "Recently Played".
Up to 20 stations stored in "Recently Played".

1 Press Δ / ∇ to select "Recently Played", then press ENTER or \triangleright .

2 Press Δ / ∇ to select the item you want to play, then press ENTER or \triangleright .



❑ Searching stations by keyword (Alphabetic strings)

1 Press Δ / ∇ to select “Search by Keyword”, then press **ENTER** or \triangleright .



2 Input the characters, then press **OK**.

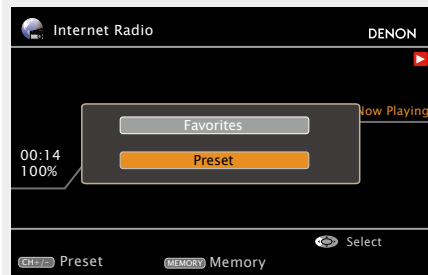
• For character input, see [page 85](#).

❑ Presetting internet radio stations

Preset Internet radio stations can be selected directly.

1 While the Internet radio station you want to preset is playing, press **MEMORY**.

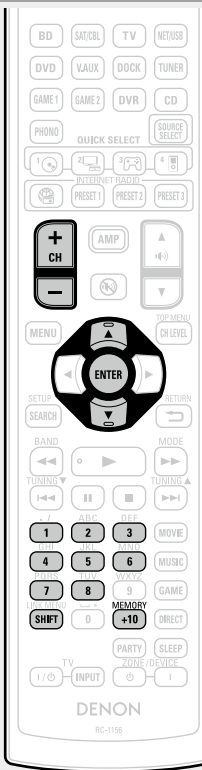
2 Press Δ / ∇ to select “Preset”, then press **ENTER**.



3 Press **SHIFT**, then press **CH +**, **CH -** or **1 - 8** to select the desired preset number.



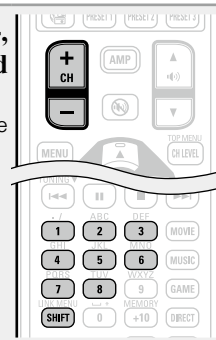
4 Press **MEMORY** again to complete the setting. The Internet radio station is now preset.



❑ Listening to preset internet radio stations

After pressing **SHIFT**, press **CH +**, **CH -** or **1 - 8** to select the registered preset number.

This unit automatically connects to the Internet and playback begins.

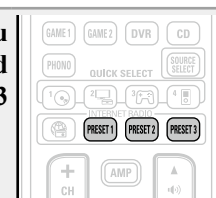


Registering Internet radio stations to PRESET CHANNEL buttons

- Up to three Internet radio stations can be registered to the **PRESET 1 - 3** buttons on the remote control unit or main unit.
- Recommended Internet radio stations have already been registered to the **PRESET 1 - 3** buttons.

While the internet radio station you want to preset is playing, press and hold **PRESET 1 - 3** for at least **3 seconds**.

The internet radio station is now preset.

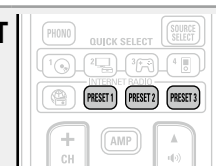


NOTE

If registered at a number that has already been preset, the previously registered setting is cleared.

Listening to an Internet radio station registered to a PRESET CHANNEL button

Press one of the registered **PRESET 1 - 3**.

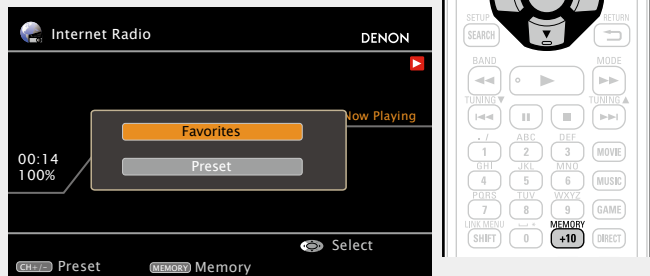


❑ Registering internet radio stations as your favorites

Favorites are listed at the top of the menu screen, so when a station is registered as a favorite it can be tuned in easily.

1 Press **MEMORY** while the Internet radio station you want to register is playing.

2 Press $\Delta \nabla$ to select “Favorites”, then press **ENTER**.



3 Press \triangleleft to select “Add”.
The Internet radio station is registered.

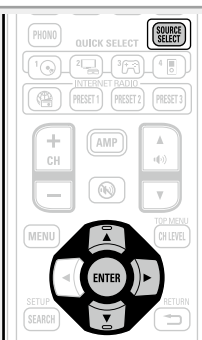


• If you do not want to register the station, press \triangleright .

❑ Listening to internet radio stations registered in your favorites

1 Press **SOURCE SELECT** to display the “SOURCE SELECT” menu, then select (☞ [page 27](#)).

2 Press $\Delta \nabla$ to select the Internet radio station, then press **ENTER** or \triangleright .
This unit automatically connects to the Internet and playback begins.

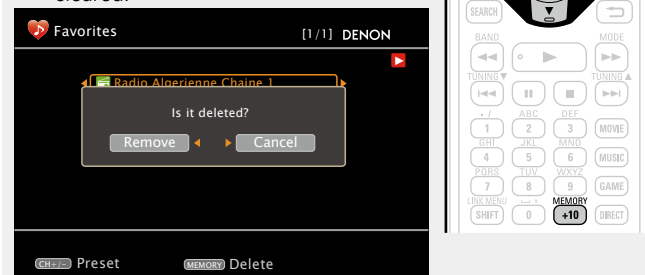


❑ Clearing internet radio stations from your favorites

1 Press **SOURCE SELECT** to display the “SOURCE SELECT” menu, then select (☞ [page 27](#)).

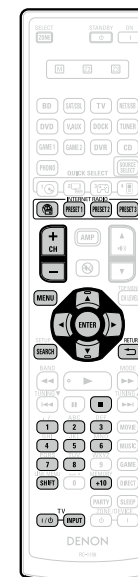
2 Press $\Delta \nabla$ to select the Internet radio station you want to clear, then press **MEMORY**.

3 Press \triangleleft to select “Remove”.
The selected Internet radio station is cleared.



• To cancel the operation without clearing the station, press \triangleright .

❑ Internet radio operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|--|--|
| INTERNET RADIO | Last played internet radio station |
| PRESET 1 – 3 | Preset channel (1 – 3) selection |
| CH +, – | Preset channel (A1 – G8) selection |
| MENU | Amp menu |
| $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ | Cursor operation |
| ENTER (Press and release) | Enter |
| ENTER (Press and hold) | Stop |
| SEARCH | Page search*1 / Character sort*2 |
| RETURN | Return |
| | Stop |
| 1 – 8 | Preset channel selection |
| SHIFT | Preset channel block selection |
| MEMORY | Favorites / Preset memory registration |
| TV I/O | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |

*1 When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH**, then press \triangleleft (previous page) or \triangleright (next page).

To cancel, press $\Delta \nabla$ or **SEARCH** twice.

*2 When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH** twice, then press $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to select the first letter you want to search mode.

• If it is not possible to search the list, “unsorted list.” is displayed.
To cancel, press $\Delta \nabla$ or **SEARCH**.



If the list is not in alphabetical order, you may not be able to perform a character sort.

Playing files stored on a computer

Use this procedure to play music files, image files or playlists.

1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (☞ [page 17](#) "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
- ② If settings are required, make the "Network Connecting" (☞ [page 108](#)).
- ③ Prepare the computer (☞ Computer's operating instructions).

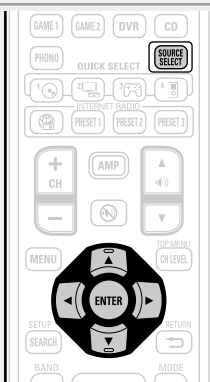
2 Press SOURCE SELECT to display the "SOURCE SELECT" menu, then select (☞ [page 27](#)).

3 Press $\Delta \nabla$ to select the server including the file to be played, then press ENTER or \triangleright .

4 Press $\Delta \nabla$ to select the search item or folder, then press ENTER or \triangleright .

5 Repeat step 4 until the file is displayed.

6 Press $\Delta \nabla$ to select the file, then press ENTER or \triangleright . Playback starts once buffering reaches "100%".



- Connections to the required system and specific settings must be made in order to play music files (☞ [page 17](#)).
- Before starting, you must launch the computer's server software and set the files as server contents. For details, see the operating instructions of your server software.
- Depending on the size of the still picture (JPEG) file, some time may be required for the file to be displayed.
- The order in which the tracks/files are displayed depends on the server specifications. If the tracks/ files are not displayed in alphabetical order due to the server specifications, searching by the first letter may not work properly.
- WMA Lossless files can be played when using a server supporting transcoding, such as Windows Media Player Ver. 11 or later.
- To play back compressed audio with extended bass or treble reproduction, we recommend playback in RESTORER mode (☞ [page 99](#)). The default setting is "Mode3".
- You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu "NET/USB" (☞ [page 114](#)). Press $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ to return to the original screen.
- Use **STATUS** on the main unit to switch between displaying the title name, artist name or album name.

☐ Playing files that have been preset or registered in your favorites






Files can be preset, registered in your favorites and played using the same operations as for Internet radio stations (☞ [page 39](#)).

NOTE

- Presettings are erased by overwriting them.
- When the operations described below is performed, the media server's database is updated and it may no longer be possible to play preset or favorite music files.
 - When you quit the media server and then restart it.
 - When music files are deleted or added on the media server.
- When using an ESCIENT server, place "ESCIENT" before the server name.

☐ Media server operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|---|--|
| INTERNET RADIO  | Last played internet radio station |
| PRESET 1 – 3 | Preset channel (1 – 3) selection |
| CH +, – | Preset channel (A1 – G8) selection |
| MENU | Amp menu |
| $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ | Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, $\Delta \nabla$) |
| ENTER (Press and release) | Enter / Pause |
| ENTER (Press and hold) | Stop |
| SEARCH | Page search*1 / Character sort*2 |
| RETURN  | Return |
|  | Playback / Pause |
| $\ll \ll \gg \gg$ | Auto search (cue) |
|  | Pause |
|  | Stop |
| 1 – 8 | Preset channel selection |
| SHIFT | Preset channel block selection |
| MEMORY | Favorites / Preset memory registration |
| TV I / ϕ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |

- **Repeat playback** (☞ [page 92](#) "Repeat")
- **Random playback** (☞ [page 92](#) "Random")
- **Slide show playback** (☞ [page 92](#) "Slide Show")

- *1 When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH**, then press \triangleleft (previous page) or \triangleright (next page). To cancel, press $\Delta \nabla$ or **SEARCH** twice.
- *2 When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH** twice, then press $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to select the first letter you want to search mode.
 - If it is not possible to search the list, "unsorted list." is displayed. To cancel, press $\Delta \nabla$ or **SEARCH**.



If the list is not in alphabetical order, you may not be able to perform a character sort.

Viewing photographs on the Flickr site

You can view photographs shared by particular users, or all of the photographs shared on Flickr.

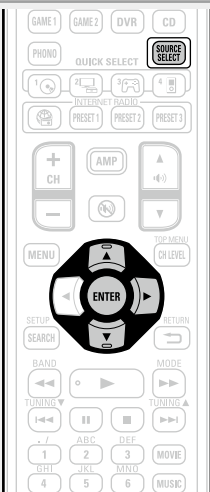
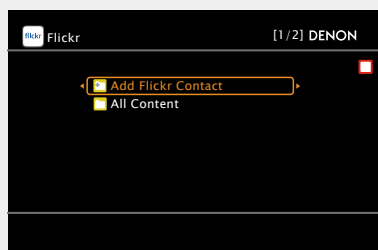
▣ Viewing photographs shared by particular users

1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (☞ [page 17](#) "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
- ② If settings are required, make the "Network Connecting" (☞ [page 108](#)).

2 Press SOURCE SELECT to display the "SOURCE SELECT" menu, then select flickr (☞ [page 27](#)).

3 Use Δ∇ to select "Add Flickr Contact", then press ENTER or ▷.



4 Enter "Contact".

- For character input, see [page 85](#).

5 After inputting the "Contact", then press ENTER.

The "Contact" entered in step 4 is displayed.

- If the Contact you typed in cannot be found, "The Flickr Contact you entered could not be found" appears. Check and type in the correct Contact.

6 Press Δ∇ to select the folder, and then press ENTER or ▷.

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| Favorites | Displays the favorite photographs of the specified user. |
| Photostream | Displays a list of shared photographs. |
| PhotoSets | Displays the folder (photograph album) list. |
| Contacts | Displays Contacts registered for Flickr Contact by a specified user. |
| Remove this Contact | Deletes a user from Flickr Contact. |

7 Press Δ∇ to select the file, and then press ENTER or ▷.

The selected file is displayed.

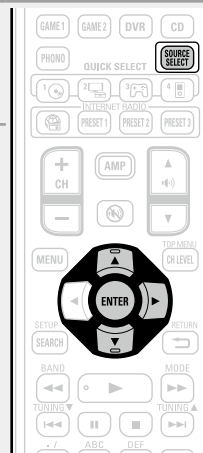
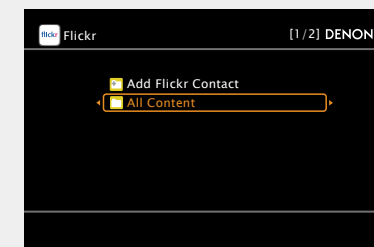
▣ Viewing all photographs on Flickr

1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (☞ [page 17](#) "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
- ② If settings are required, make the "Network Connecting" (☞ [page 108](#)).

2 Press SOURCE SELECT to display the "SOURCE SELECT" menu, then select flickr (☞ [page 27](#)).

3 Use Δ∇ to select "All Content", then press ENTER or ▷.



4 Press Δ∇ to select the folder, and then press ENTER or ▷.

Interestingness Displays photographs that are popular from the number of user comments or number of times they are added as favorites.

Recent Displays the most recently added photographs.

Search by text Search for photographs by keyword.

5 Press Δ∇ to select the file, and then press ENTER or ▷.

The selected file is displayed.

NOTE

Depending on the file format, some photographs cannot be viewed.

❑ Flickr operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| INTERNET RADIO | Last played internet radio station |
| PRESET 1 – 3 | Preset channel (1 – 3) selection |
| CH +, – | Preset channel (A1 – G8) selection |
| MENU | Amp menu |
| | Cursor operation / Auto search (cue,) |
| ENTER (Press and release) | Enter |
| ENTER (Press and hold) | Stop |
| SEARCH | Page Search* |
| RETURN | Return |
| | Stop |
| 1 – 8 | Preset channel selection |
| SHIFT | Preset channel block selection |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |

• Slide show playback ([page 92](#) "Slide Show")

* When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH**, then press (previous page) or (next page).
To cancel, press or **SEARCH**.

Listening to Napster

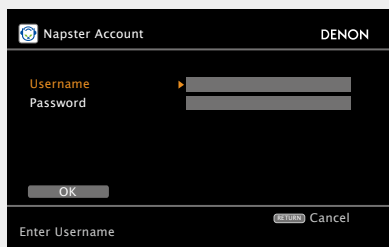
1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (☞ [page 17](#) "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
- ② If settings are required, make the "Network Connecting" (☞ [page 108](#)).

2 Press SOURCE SELECT to display the "SOURCE SELECT" menu, then select (☞ [page 27](#)).



3 Use Δ / ∇ / \triangleright to input "Username" and "Password".




- For character input, see [page 85](#).

4 After inputting the "Username" and "Password", select "OK", then press ENTER.

If the "Username" and "Password" match, the top menu for Napster is displayed.

NOTE

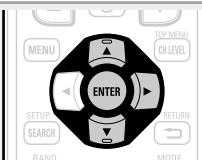
- The password should be no longer than 99 characters.
- Press **RETURN**  to cancel the input. When "Cancel input?" is displayed, select "Yes", then press **ENTER**.

❑ Searching from Napster menu

1 Use Δ / ∇ to select search item or folder, then press ENTER or \triangleright .

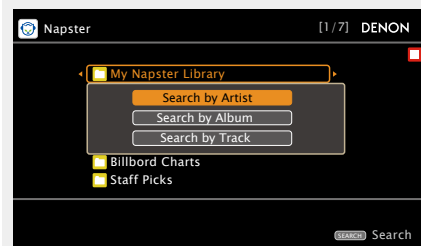
2 Repeat step 1 until the track is displayed.

3 Use Δ / ∇ to select the track item, then press ENTER or \triangleright .



❑ Entering a character sort for the track you want to listen to

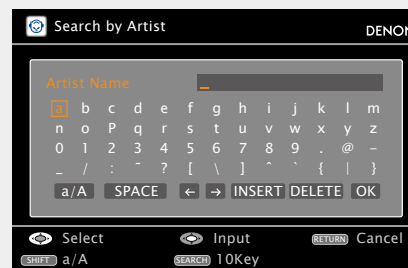
1 Press SEARCH.



- You can search by artist name, album name or track name.

2 Use Δ / ∇ to select the search item, then press ENTER.

3 Input the characters, then press **OK**.



- For character input, see [page 85](#).

❑ Registering tracks in my Napster library

1 Press \triangleright while the track you wish to register is playing.

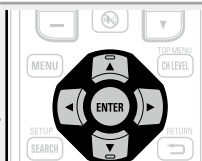
2 Select "Add to my library", then press ENTER or \triangleright . The track is entered in the Library.



Listening to tracks registered in my Napster library

1 Use Δ / ∇ to select "My Napster Library", then press ENTER or \triangleright .

2 Use Δ / ∇ to select the information or track, then press ENTER.



- To play back compressed audio with extended bass or treble reproduction, we recommend playback in RESTORER mode (☞ [page 99](#)). The default setting is "Mode3".
- You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu "NET/USB" (☞ [page 114](#)). Press Δ / ∇ / \triangleleft / \triangleright to return to the original screen.
- Use **STATUS** on the main unit to switch between displaying the title name, artist name or album name.

□ Napster operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| INTERNET RADIO | Last played internet radio station |
| PRESET 1 – 3 | Preset channel (1 – 3) selection |
| CH +, – | Preset channel (A1 – G8) selection |
| MENU | Amp menu |
| | Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, Δ▽) |
| ENTER (Press and release) | Enter |
| ENTER (Press and hold) | Stop |
| SEARCH | Search menu / Page search* |
| RETURN | Return |
| | Playback |
| | Auto search (cue) |
| | Stop |
| 1 – 8 | Preset channel selection |
| SHIFT | Preset channel block selection |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |

- Repeat playback (page 92 "Repeat")
- Random playback (page 92 "Random")

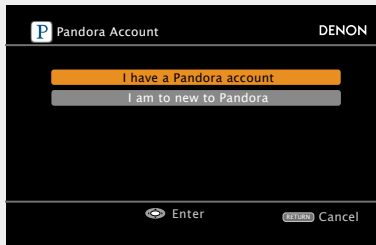
* When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH** twice, then press (previous page) or (next page).
To cancel, press or **SEARCH**.

Listening to Pandora

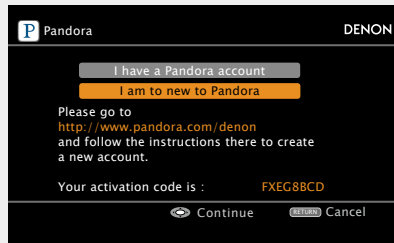
1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (☞ [page 17](#) "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
- ② If settings are required, make the "Network Connecting" (☞ [page 108](#)).

2 Press SOURCE SELECT to display the "SOURCE SELECT" menu, then select **P** (☞ [page 27](#)).

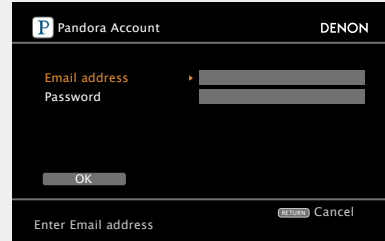


- If you do not have a Pandora account, press ∇ to select "I am new to Pandora". The URL of Pandora and activation code are displayed. Access the Pandora web page from your PC and register the displayed activation code and account information. Then press **ENTER**.



3 If you have a Pandora account, press \triangle/∇ to select "I have a Pandora account", then press **ENTER** or \triangleright .

4 Input "Email address" and "Password".



- For character input, see [page 85](#).

5 After inputting the "Email address" and "Password", select "OK", then press **ENTER**. If the "Email address" and "Password" match, the top menu for Pandora is displayed.

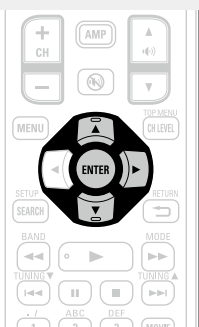
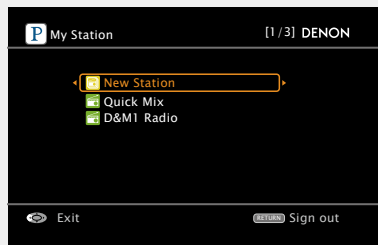
NOTE

Press **RETURN** \curvearrowright to cancel the input. When "Cancel input?" is displayed, select "Yes", then press **ENTER**.

Creating an original radio station

You can create up to 100 original radio stations.

1 Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select “New Station”, then press **ENTER** or \triangleright .



4 Press $\Delta \nabla$, select a file (e.g. D&M2) from the list, and press **ENTER** or \triangleright .

Selected file is played back. “Radio” is added to the end of a filename, and your original radio station is created (e.g. D&M2 Radio).



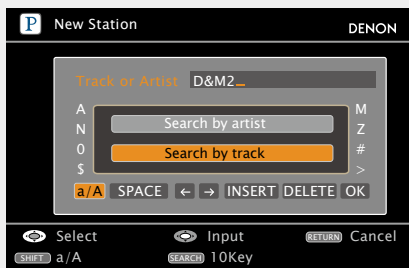
2 Input a “Track or Artist”, then press **OK**.



• For character input, see [page 85](#).

3 Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select “Search by artist” or “Search by track”, then press **ENTER**.

You can search and display a list by track or artist.



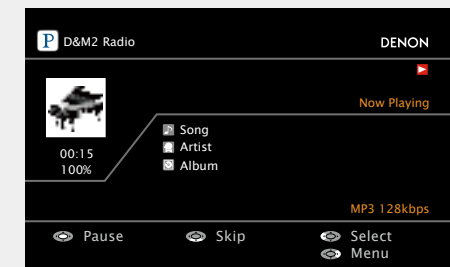
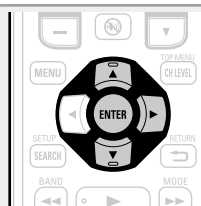
Listening to a created radio station

Listening to a created radio station (e.g. D&M2 Radio)

By specifying your favorite track or artist name, music that has a similar rhythm or sound is chosen and streamed.

Press $\Delta \nabla$ and select the radio station (“D&M2 Radio”) that you want to listen to, and press **ENTER** or \triangleright .

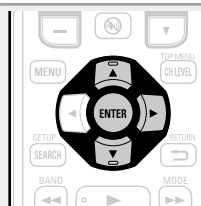
In Pandora, you can search for the track name or artist name using “D&M2” as a keyword. When the search is complete, tracks that have a similar rhythm or sound are streamed.



Listening to created radio stations at random

Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select “Quick Mix”, then press **ENTER** or \triangleright .

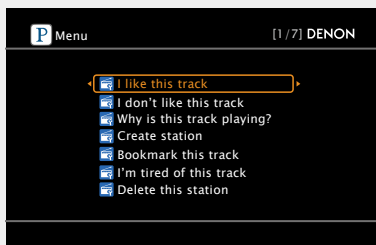
Created radio stations are selected at random, and tracks are streamed.



❑ Arranging tracks within radio stations

You can sort tracks by operating the Pandora menu screen while a track is playing.

Press **▶** while a track is playing.
The Pandora menu screen is displayed.



- I like this track**
 - Press when you like the track that is being played.
 - It will return to the Play Screen. And (Thumbs up) icon is displayed. (The icon is not displayed on the next track.)
- I don't like this track**
 - Press when you don't like the track that is being played.
 - It will return to the Play Screen. And (Thumbs down) icon is displayed. (The icon is not displayed on the next track.)
- Why is this track playing?**
 - Displays the reason why Pandora selected this track.
- Create station**
 - Creates a Station for the Track or Artist being played.
- Bookmark this track**
 - Bookmarks the track currently being played.
 - You can check on a computer or iPhone etc.
 - For details, see the Pandora web page.
- I'm tired of this track**
 - Press when you don't like the track that is being played.
 - The track will not be played for 1 month.
- Delete this station**
 - Press when you want to delete the station that is being played.

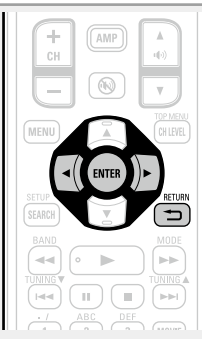
NOTE

- You can Skip up to 6 Tracks that are being played back within 1 hour.
- You can create up to 100 New Stations (radio stations).

❑ Sign out

Disassociate this unit from your Pandora account.

1 While the Pandora top menu is displayed, press **RETURN**.



2 When the popup menu appears, press **◀ ▶** to select "Yes", then press **ENTER**.

❑ Pandora operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| MENU | Amp menu |
| △▽◀▶ | Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, ▽) |
| ENTER (Press and release) | Enter / Pause |
| ENTER (Press and hold) | Stop |
| SEARCH | Page search* |
| RETURN | Return |
| ▶ | Playback |
| ▶▶ | Auto search (cue) |
| | Pause |
| ■ | Stop |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |

* When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH** twice, then press **◀** (previous page) or **▶** (next page).
To cancel, press **△▽** or **SEARCH**.

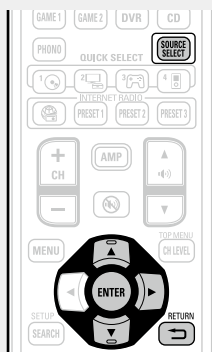
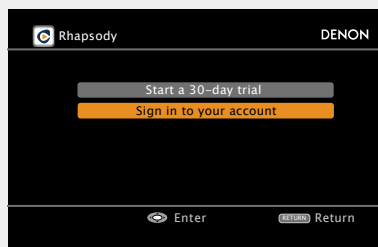
Listening to Rhapsody

1 Prepare for playback.

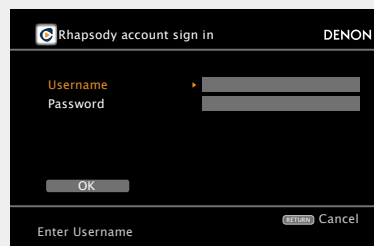
- ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (refer page 17 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
- ② If settings are required, make the "Network Connecting" (refer page 108).

2 Press SOURCE SELECT to display the "SOURCE SELECT" menu, then select (refer page 27).

3 Use Δ / ∇ to select "Sign in to your account", then press ENTER or \triangleright .



4 Input Username and Password.




• For character input, see page 85.

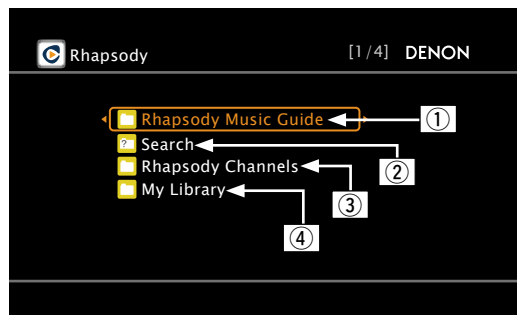
5 After inputting the "Username" and "Password", select "OK", then press ENTER.

If the "Username" and "Password" match, the top menu for Rhapsody is displayed.

NOTE

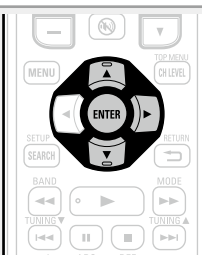
- The password should be no longer than 99 characters.
- Press RETURN  to cancel the input. When "Cancel input?" is displayed, select "Yes", then press ENTER.

Select the search mode



① Search from Rhapsody latest information

1 Use Δ / ∇ to select "Rhapsody Music Guide", then press ENTER or \triangleright .



2 Press Δ / ∇ to select the information for track selection, then press ENTER or \triangleright .

• For character input, see page 85.

3 Repeat step 2 until the track is displayed.

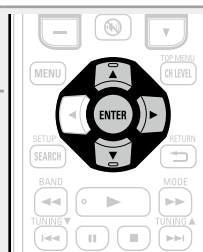
4 Use Δ / ∇ to select the track, then press ENTER or \triangleright .

② Enter a character search for the track you want to listen to

1 Use Δ / ∇ to select "Search", then press ENTER or \triangleright .

2 Use Δ / ∇ to select the search item, then press ENTER or \triangleright . The search display appears.

• You can search by artist name, album name, track name or keyword.



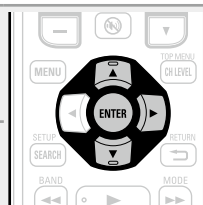
3 Enter the characters, then press ENTER.

③ Search from the Rhapsody internet radio station

1 Use Δ / ∇ to select "Rhapsody Channels", then press ENTER or \triangleright .

2 Repeat step 1 until the radio station is displayed.

3 Use Δ / ∇ to select radio station, then press ENTER or \triangleright . The search display appears.

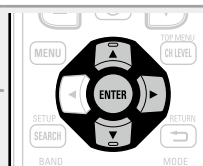


④ Listening to tracks registered in my library

1 Use Δ / ∇ to select "My Library", then press ENTER or \triangleright .

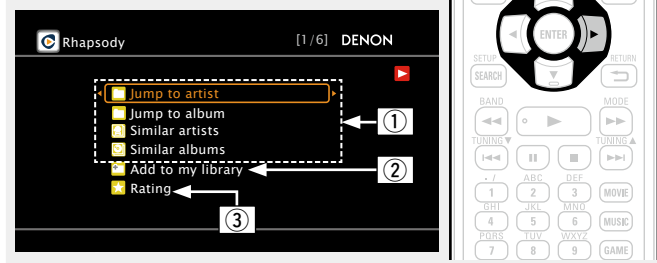
2 Repeat step 1 until the track is displayed.

3 Use Δ / ∇ to select the information or track, then press ENTER or \triangleright . After selecting, the information is displayed



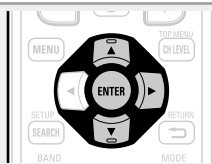
Track menu

Press **▷** during playback to display the track menu.



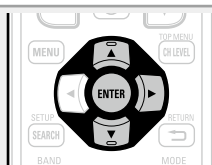
① Search from the similar music

Use **△▽** to select the search item, then press **ENTER** or **▷**.



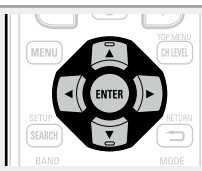
② Registering tracks in my library

Use **△▽** to select “Add to my library”, then press **ENTER** or **▷**.
The track is entered in the library.



③ Rating function

- 1 Use **△▽** to select “Rating”, then press **ENTER** or **▷**.
- 2 Use **◀▶** to select the rating, then press **ENTER**.



- To play back compressed audio with extended bass or treble reproduction, we recommend playback in RESTORER mode ([page 99](#)). The default setting is “Mode3”.
- You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu “NET/USB” ([page 114](#)). Press **△▽◀▶** to return to the original screen.
- Use **STATUS** on the main unit to switch between displaying the title name, artist name or album name.

Rhapsody operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| INTERNET RADIO | Last played internet radio station |
| PRESET 1 – 3 | Preset channel (1 – 3) selection |
| CH +, – | Preset channel (A1 – G8) selection |
| MENU | Amp menu |
| △▽◀▶ | Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, △▽) |
| ENTER (Press and release) | Enter / Pause |
| ENTER (Press and hold) | Stop |
| SEARCH | Page search*1 / Character sort*2 |
| RETURN | Return |
| ▶ | Playback / Pause |
| ◀▶▶▶ | Auto search (cue) |
| | Pause |
| ■ | Stop |
| 1 – 8 | Preset channel selection |
| SHIFT | Preset channel block selection |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |

- Repeat playback ([page 92](#) “Repeat”)
- Random playback ([page 92](#) “Random”)

- *1 When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH**, then press **◀** (previous page) or **▶** (next page). To cancel, press **△▽** or **SEARCH** twice.
- *2 When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH** twice, then press **◀▶** to select the first letter you want to search mode.
 - If it is not possible to search the list, “unsorted list.” is displayed. To cancel, press **△▽** or **SEARCH**.



If the list is not in alphabetical order, you may not be able to perform a character sort.

Playing a USB memory device

Playing back music or still picture (JPEG) files recorded on a USB memory device.

Important information

USB memory devices

A USB memory device can be connected to the USB port of this unit to play music and still picture (JPEG) files stored on the USB memory device.

Also, files stored on an iPod can be played when the iPod is connected directly to the USB port of this unit. See "Connect an iPod directly to the USB port to play back" (page 31).

- Only USB memory devices conforming to mass storage class and MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) standards can be played on this unit.
- This unit is compatible with USB memory devices in "FAT16" or "FAT32" format.

Album art function

When an MP3 music file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while playing the file.

Slide show function

Still picture (JPEG) files stored on USB memory devices can be played as slide shows.

The duration each picture is displayed can be set (page 92).

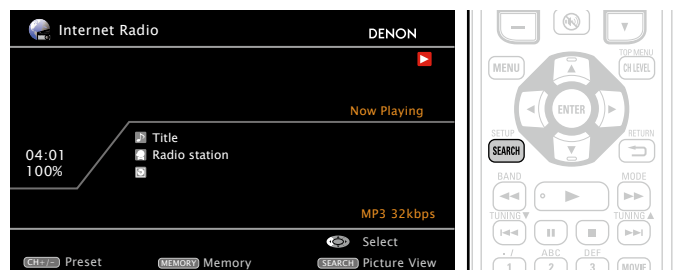


This unit plays back image (JPEG) files in the orientation in which they are stored in the folder.

Function that simultaneously plays back music and image files from the network

You can playback music and image files at the same time by playing back music files, and then playing back image files.

Also, when selecting music files after playing back image files, press **SEARCH** when the music playback screen is displayed. Music files and image files can be played back simultaneously. At this time, set "Slide Show" (page 92) in the menu to "ON".



Network contents that can be played back simultaneously are as follows.

- Music files: Favorites, Internet Radio, Media server, USB, iPod Browse Mode (NET/USB)
- Image files: Media server, USB, Flickr

[Compatible formats]

| | USB memory devices *1 |
|---|-----------------------|
| WMA (Windows Media Audio) | ✓*2 |
| MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3) | ✓ |
| WAV | ✓ |
| MPEG-4 AAC | ✓*3 |
| FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec) | ✓ |
| JPEG | ✓ |

*1 USB

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- WAV format Quantization bit rate: 16 bits
- FLAC format Quantization bit rate: 16 or 24 bits

*2 Copyright-protected files can be played on certain portable players compatible with MTP.

*3 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.

Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

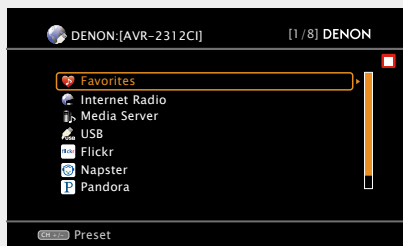
[Compatible formats]

| | Sampling frequency | Bit rate | Extension |
|---|------------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| WMA (Windows Media Audio) | 32/44.1/48 kHz | 48 – 192 kbps | .wma |
| MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3) | 32/44.1/48 kHz | 32 – 320 kbps | .mp3 |
| WAV | 32/44.1/48 kHz | – | .wav |
| MPEG-4 AAC | 32/44.1/48 kHz | 16 – 320 kbps | .aac/ .m4a/ .mp4 |
| FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec) | 32/44.1/48/88.2/96 kHz | – | .flac |

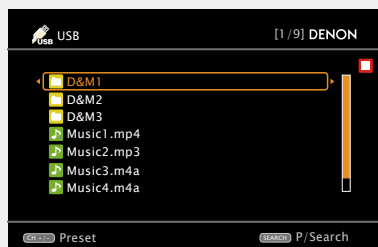
Playing files stored on USB memory devices


1 Connect the USB memory device to the USB port (page 15 “Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port”).

2 Press **NET/USB** to switch the input source to “NET/USB”.



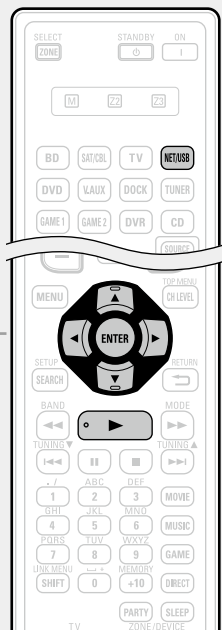
3 Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select “USB”, then press **ENTER** or \triangleright .



• Selecting  in the “SOURCE SELECT” menu, lets you directly select “USB/iPod”.

4 Press $\Delta \nabla$ to select the search item or folder, then press **ENTER** or \triangleright .

5 Press $\Delta \nabla$ to select the file, then press **ENTER**, \triangleright or \blacktriangleright .
Playback starts.







- You can specify the duration of the on-screen display to be displayed (default: 30 sec) at menu “NET/USB” (page 114). Press $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft$ \triangleright to return to the original screen.
- To play back compressed audio with extended bass or treble reproduction, we recommend playback in RESTORER mode (page 99). The default setting is “Mode3”.
- If the USB memory device is divided into multiple partitions, only the top partition can be selected.
- This unit is compatible with MP3 files conforming to “MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3” standards.

NOTE

- Note that DENON will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on a USB memory device when using this unit in conjunction with the USB memory device.
- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- DENON does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or be supplied power. When using a USB portable hard disk that can draw power from an AC adapter, we recommend using the AC adapter.
- It is not possible to connect and use a computer via the USB port of this unit using a USB cable.

USB operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|---|--|
| INTERNET RADIO  | Last played internet radio station |
| PRESET 1 – 3 | Preset channel (1 – 3) selection |
| CH +, – | Preset channel (A1 – G8) selection |
| MENU | Amp menu |
| $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ | Cursor operation / Auto search (cue, $\Delta \nabla$) |
| ENTER (Press and release) | Enter / Pause |
| ENTER (Press and hold) | Stop |
| SEARCH | Page search*1 / Character sort*2 |
| RETURN  | Return |
|  | Playback / Pause |
| $\blacktriangleleft \blacktriangleright$ | Auto search (cue) |
| II | Pause |
|  | Stop |
| 1 – 8 | Preset channel selection |
| SHIFT | Preset channel block selection |
| TV I / ϕ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |

- Repeat playback (page 92 “Repeat”)
- Random playback (page 92 “Random”)
- Slide show playback (page 92 “Slide Show”)

- *1 When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH**, then press \triangleleft (previous page) or \triangleright (next page). To cancel, press $\Delta \nabla$ or **SEARCH** twice.
- *2 When the menu screen is displayed, press **SEARCH** twice, then press $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to select the first letter you want to search mode.
- If it is not possible to search the list, “unsorted list.” is displayed. To cancel, press $\Delta \nabla$ or **SEARCH**.



If the list is not in alphabetical order, you may not be able to perform a character sort.

Selecting a listening mode (SURROUND MODE)

This unit can play input audio signals in multi-channel surround mode or in stereo mode.

Select a listening mode suitable for the playback contents (cinema, music, etc.) or according to your liking.

Selecting a listening mode

1 Play the selected device
([page 28 - 50](#)).

2 Press **MOVIE**, **MUSIC**, **GAME** or **DIRECT** to select a listening mode.

• Each time **MOVIE**, **MUSIC** or **GAME** is pressed, the listening mode is switched.

MOVIE Switches to the listening mode suitable for enjoying movies and TV programs.

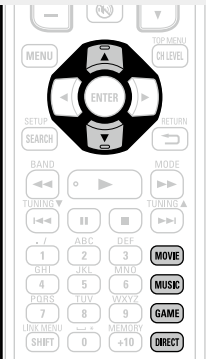
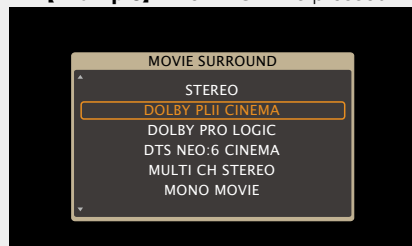
MUSIC Switches to the listening mode suitable for enjoying music.

GAME Switches to the listening mode suitable for enjoying games.

DIRECT Switches the listening mode to Direct or Pure Direct mode. In Direct mode, the audio is played back exactly how it was recorded.

• Pressing **MOVIE**, **MUSIC** or **GAME** displays a list of the surround modes that can be selected on the TV screen. While the list is displayed, you can also use Δ / ∇ to select a surround mode.

[Example] When **MOVIE** is pressed



Listening mode

- The following listening modes can be selected using the **MOVIE**, **MUSIC**, **GAME**, and **DIRECT** buttons.
- Adjust the sound field effect with the menu "Surround Parameters" ([page 95](#)) to enjoy your favorite sound mode.

| Operation button | Input signal | Listening mode | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| MOVIE | 2-channel *1 | STEREO | |
| | | DOLBY PLIIx Cinema *2 | |
| | | DOLBY PLII Cinema *2 | |
| | | DOLBY Pro Logic *2 | |
| | | DTS NEO:6 Cinema *2 | |
| | | DOLBY PLIIz Height *2 | |
| | | MULTI CH STEREO | |
| | Multi-channel *3 | STEREO | |
| | | Dolby Digital | DOLBY DIGITAL |
| | | | DOLBY DIGITAL EX |
| | DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIx Cinema | | |
| | DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIz | | |
| | Dolby TrueHD | DOLBY TrueHD | |
| | | DOLBY TrueHD + EX | |
| | | DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIz | |
| | Dolby Digital Plus | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus | |
| | | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + EX | |
| | | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIx Cinema | |
| | DTS | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIz | |
| | | DTS SURROUND | |
| DTS ES DSCRT 6.1 | | | |
| DTS ES MTRX 6.1 | | | |
| DTS 96/24 | | | |
| DTS 96 ES MTRX | | | |
| DTS ES DSCRT | | | |
| DTS + NEO:6 | | | |
| DTS + PLIIx Cinema | | | |
| DTS + PLIIz | | | |

| Operation button | Input signal | Listening mode |
|------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| MOVIE | DTS-HD / DTS Express | DTS-HD HI RES |
| | | DTS-HD MSTR |
| | | DTS Express |
| | | DTS-HD + NEO:6 |
| | | DTS-HD + PLIIx Cinema |
| | PCM multi-channel | MULTI CH IN |
| | | MULTI CH IN 7.1 |
| | | MULTI IN + Dolby EX |
| | Multi-channel *3 | MULTI IN + PLIIx Cinema |
| | | MULTI IN + PLIIz |
| | | MULTI CH STEREO |
| | | MONO MOVIE |
| VIRTUAL | | |

*1 2-channel also includes analog input.

*2 This mode plays back 2-channel source in 5.1 or 7.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.

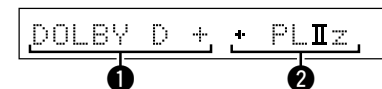
*3 Some listening modes cannot be selected, depending on the audio format or number of input channels of the input signal. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding surround modes" ([page 133](#)).

| Operation button | Input signal | Listening mode |
|------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| MUSIC | 2-channel *1 | STEREO |
| | | DOLBY PLIIx Music *2 |
| | | DOLBY PLII Music *2 |
| | | DTS NEO:6 Music *2 |
| | | DOLBY PLIIz Height *2 |
| | | MULTI CH STEREO |
| | | ROCK ARENA |
| | | JAZZ CLUB |
| | | MATRIX |
| | VIRTUAL | |
| | Multi-channel *3 | STEREO |
| | | DOLBY DIGITAL |
| | Dolby Digital | DOLBY DIGITAL EX |
| | | DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIx Music |
| | | DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIz |
| | Dolby TrueHD | DOLBY TrueHD |
| | | DOLBY TrueHD + EX |
| | | DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIx Music |
| | Dolby Digital Plus | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus |
| | | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + EX |
| | | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIx Music |
| | DTS | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIz |
| | | DTS SURROUND |
| | | DTS ES DSCRT 6.1 |
| | | DTS ES MTRX 6.1 |
| | | DTS 96/24 |
| | | DTS 96 ES MTRX |
| | | DTS ES DSCRT |
| | | DTS + NEO:6 |
| | | DTS + PLIIx Music |
| | DTS + PLIIz | |
| | DTS-HD / DTS Express | DTS-HD HI RES |
| | | DTS-HD MSTR |
| | | DTS Express |
| | | DTS-HD + NEO:6 |
| | PCM multi-channel | DTS-HD + PLIIx Music |
| | | DTS-HD + PLIIz |
| | | MULTI CH IN |
| | | MULTI CH IN 7.1 |
| | Multi-channel *3 | MULTI IN + Dolby EX |
| | | MULTI IN + PLIIx Music |
| MULTI IN + PLIIz | | |
| MULTI CH STEREO | | |
| ROCK ARENA | | |
| JAZZ CLUB | | |
| MATRIX | | |
| VIRTUAL | | |

| Operation button | Input signal | Listening mode |
|-------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| GAME | 2-channel *1 | STEREO |
| | | DOLBY PLIIx Game *2 |
| | | DOLBY PLII Game *2 |
| | | DOLBY PLIIz Height *2 |
| | | MULTI CH STEREO |
| | | VIDEO GAME |
| | | VIRTUAL |
| | Multi-channel *3 | STEREO |
| | | DOLBY DIGITAL |
| | Dolby Digital | DOLBY DIGITAL EX |
| | Dolby TrueHD | DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIz |
| | | DOLBY TrueHD |
| | Dolby Digital Plus | DOLBY TrueHD + EX |
| | | DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIz |
| | Dolby Digital Plus | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus |
| | | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + EX |
| | DTS | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIz |
| | | DTS SURROUND |
| | | DTS ES DSCRT 6.1 |
| | | DTS ES MTRX 6.1 |
| | | DTS 96/24 |
| | | DTS 96 ES MTRX |
| | DTS-HD / DTS Express | DTS ES DSCRT |
| | | DTS + NEO:6 |
| | | DTS + PLIIz |
| | | DTS-HD HI RES |
| PCM multi-channel | DTS-HD MSTR | |
| | DTS Express | |
| | DTS-HD + NEO:6 | |
| Multi-channel *3 | DTS-HD + PLIIz | |
| | MULTI CH IN | |
| | MULTI CH IN 7.1 | |
| DIRECT | MULTI IN + Dolby EX | |
| | MULTI IN + PLIIz | |
| All | MULTI CH STEREO | |
| | VIDEO GAME | |
| | | VIRTUAL |
| | | DIRECT |
| | | PURE DIRECT |

- *1 2-channel also includes analog input.
- *2 This mode plays back 2-channel source in 5.1 or 7.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.
- *3 Some listening modes cannot be selected, depending on the audio format or number of channels of the input signal. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding surround modes" (page 133).

Views on the TV screen or display



- 1 Shows a decoder to be used.
 - A DOLBY DIGITAL Plus decoder is displayed as "DOLBY D +".
- 2 Shows a decoder that creates sound output from the surround back speakers.
 - "+ PLIIz" indicates the front height sound from front height speakers.

□ **Description of listening mode types**

Dolby listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| DOLBY PLIIx*1 | This mode can be selected when a Dolby Pro Logic IIx decoder is used to play back 2-channel source in 6.1/7.1-channel surround sound including the surround back channel. By adding the surround back channel, a stronger surround feeling is obtained compared to Dolby Pro Logic II. There are three playback modes: "Cinema" mode that is optimized for movie playback, "Music" mode that is optimized for music playback, and "Game" mode that is optimized for game play. |
| DOLBY PLII | This mode can be selected when a Dolby Pro Logic II decoder is used to play back 2-channel source in 5.1-channel surround sound with a natural, realistic feel. |
| DOLBY Pro Logic | This mode can be selected when a DOLBY Pro Logic decoder is used to play 2-channel source in 4.1-channel surround sound (Left/Center/Right/Surround Mono). |
| DOLBY PLIIz*2 | This mode can be selected when a Dolby Pro Logic IIz decoder is used to play back 2-channel source in 7.1-channel surround sound with added front height channel. By adding a front height channel, the vertical expression is emphasized, improving the three-dimensionality of the sound. |
| DOLBY DIGITAL | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded with Dolby Digital. |
| DOLBY DIGITAL EX*1 | This mode improves the depth, dimension, and expressiveness of the sound stage by sound field playback including surround back channels. |
| DOLBY TrueHD | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby TrueHD. |
| DOLBY DIGITAL Plus | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded with Dolby Digital Plus. |

*1 This can be selected when "Speaker Config." – "Surr.Back" is not set to "None".

*2 This can be selected when "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" is not set to "None".

DTS listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| DTS NEO:6 | This mode can be selected when a DTS NEO:6 decoder is used to play back 2-channel source in 6.1/7.1-channel surround sound including the surround back channel. There is a "Cinema" mode optimized for movie playback, and a "Music" mode optimized for music playback. |
| DTS SURROUND | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS. |
| DTS ES DSCRT6.1* | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS-ES. Provides optimum playback of DTS-ES Discrete signals using surround back. |
| DTS ES MTRX6.1* | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS-ES. Surround back channel data encoded in DTS-ES Matrix recording software is played from the surround back channel. |
| DTS 96/24 | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS 96/24. |
| DTS-HD | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS-HD. |
| DTS Express | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS Express. |

* This can be selected when "Speaker Config." – "Surr.Back" is not set to "None".

PCM multi-channel listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| MULTI CH IN | This mode can be selected when playing multi-channel PCM sources . |

DENON original listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| MULTI CH STEREO | This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers. The same sound as that from the front speakers (L/R) is played back at the same level from the surround speakers (L/R) and surround back speakers (L/R). |
| ROCK ARENA | This mode is for enjoying the atmosphere of a live concert in an arena. |
| JAZZ CLUB | This mode is for enjoying the atmosphere of a live concert in a jazz club. |
| MONO MOVIE | This mode is for playing monaural movie sources with surround sound. When playing sources recorded in monaural in the "MONO MOVIE" mode, the sound will be off balance with a single channel (left or right), so input to both channels. |
| VIDEO GAME | This mode is suited for achieving surround sound with video games. |
| MATRIX | This mode lets you add a spacious feel to stereo music sources. |
| VIRTUAL | This mode is for enjoying surround effects using only the front speakers or headphones. |

STEREO listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| STEREO | This is the mode for playing in stereo. The tone can be adjusted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound is output from the front left and right speakers and subwoofer. • If multichannel signals are input, they are mixed down to 2-channel audio and are played. |

Direct listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| DIRECT | Sound recorded in source is played as is. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Surround back signals or front height signals are not created. |
| PURE DIRECT | This mode is for playback in higher sound quality than in "Direct playback" mode. Turn the display of the amplifier off to stop the analogue video circuit. This suppresses the source of noise that affects sound quality. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Surround back signals or front height signals are not created. |



In Direct listening mode, the following items cannot be adjusted.






- Tone ([page 97](#))
- MultEQ® XT ([page 98](#))
- Dynamic EQ® ([page 98](#))
- Dynamic Volume® ([page 98](#))
- RESTORER ([page 99](#))

NOTE

- Video signals are only output when HDMI signals are played in the PURE DIRECT mode.
- When in the PURE DIRECT mode, the menu screen is not displayed.

Advanced version

Here, we explain functions and operations that let you make better use of this unit.

- **Speaker installation/connection (Advanced connection)**  [page 57](#)
- **Playback (Advanced operation)**  [page 68](#)
- **Playback in ZONE2 (Separate room)**  [page 79](#)
- **How to make detailed settings**  [page 82](#)
- **Operating the connected devices by remote control unit**  [page 118](#)

Speaker installation/connection (Advanced connection)

Here we describe the installation, connection and setup methods for speakers other than 5.1-channel speakers. For the installation, connection and setup methods for 5.1-channel speakers, see [page 4](#) "SETUP WIZARD".

Use Audyssey® Auto Setup function of this unit to automatically detect the number of connected speakers and perform optimal settings for the speakers to be used.

Procedure for speaker settings

Install

Connect ([page 59](#))

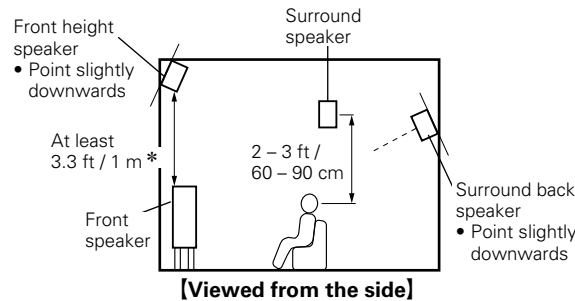
Set up speakers ([page 65](#))

Install

This unit is compatible with Dolby Pro Logic IIz ([page 137](#)), which offers an even wider and deeper surround sensation. When using Dolby Pro Logic IIz, install front height speakers.



Install the surround back speakers in a position 2 to 3 ft (60 to 90 cm) higher than ear level.

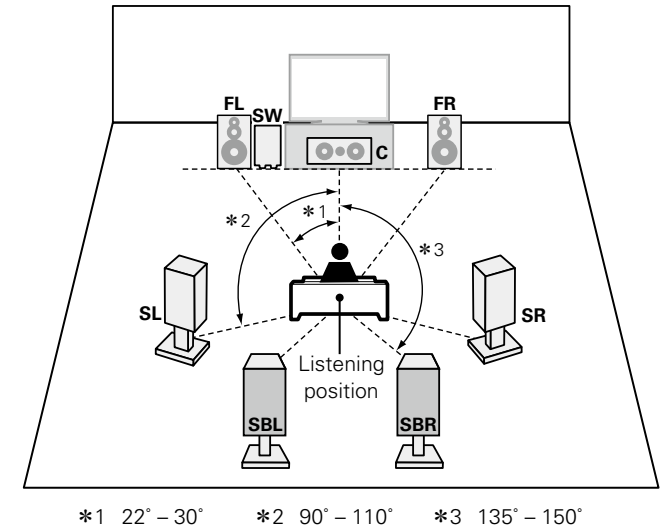


* Recommended for Dolby Pro Logic IIz

NOTE

It is not possible to use the surround back speakers and front height speakers simultaneously.

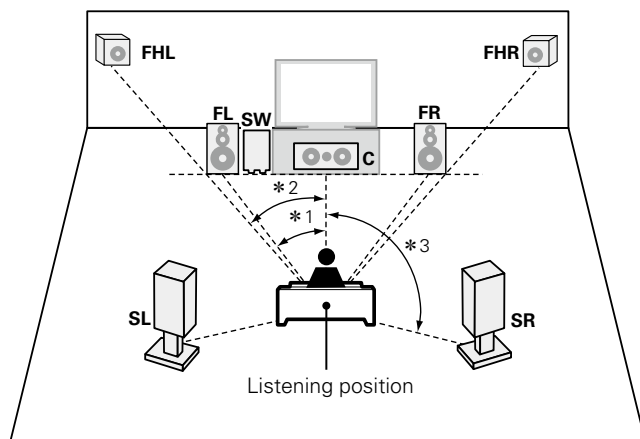
When 7.1ch (Surround back speaker) installed



[Speaker abbreviations]

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| FL Front speaker (L) | SL Surround speaker (L) |
| FR Front speaker (R) | SR Surround speaker (R) |
| C Center speaker | SBL Surround back speaker (L) |
| SW Subwoofer | SBR Surround back speaker (R) |

When 7.1ch (Front height speaker) installed

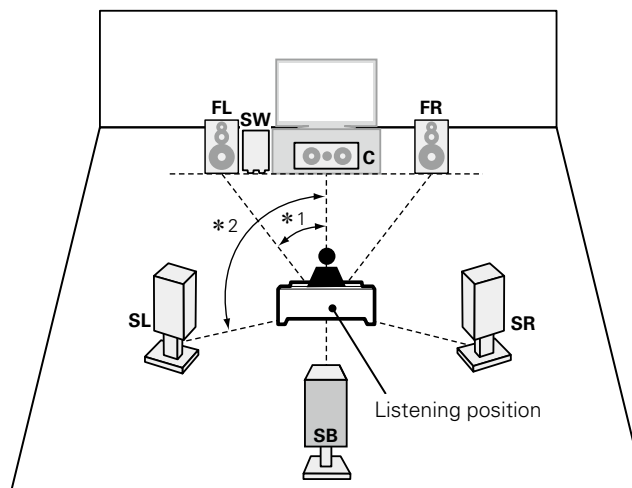


*1 22° - 30° *2 22° - 45° *3 90° - 110°

[Speaker abbreviations]

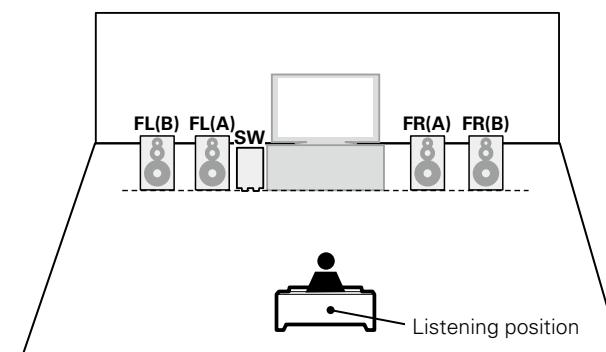
- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| FL Front speaker (L) | SB Surround back speaker |
| FR Front speaker (R) | FHL Front height speaker (L) |
| C Center speaker | FHR Front height speaker (R) |
| SW Subwoofer | |
| SL Surround speaker (L) | |
| SR Surround speaker (R) | |

When 6.1ch (Surround back speaker) installed



*1 22° - 30° *2 90° - 110°

When Front A/B speakers installed



Connect

- For the method of connecting 5.1-channel speakers, see [page 6](#) “Connecting the speakers”.
- For the method of connecting the TV, see [page 3](#) “Connect this unit to the television using an HDMI cable (sold separately)”.

7.1-channel (Surround back speaker) connection

The illustration on the right shows a connection example for performing 7.1-channel playback using the surround back speakers.

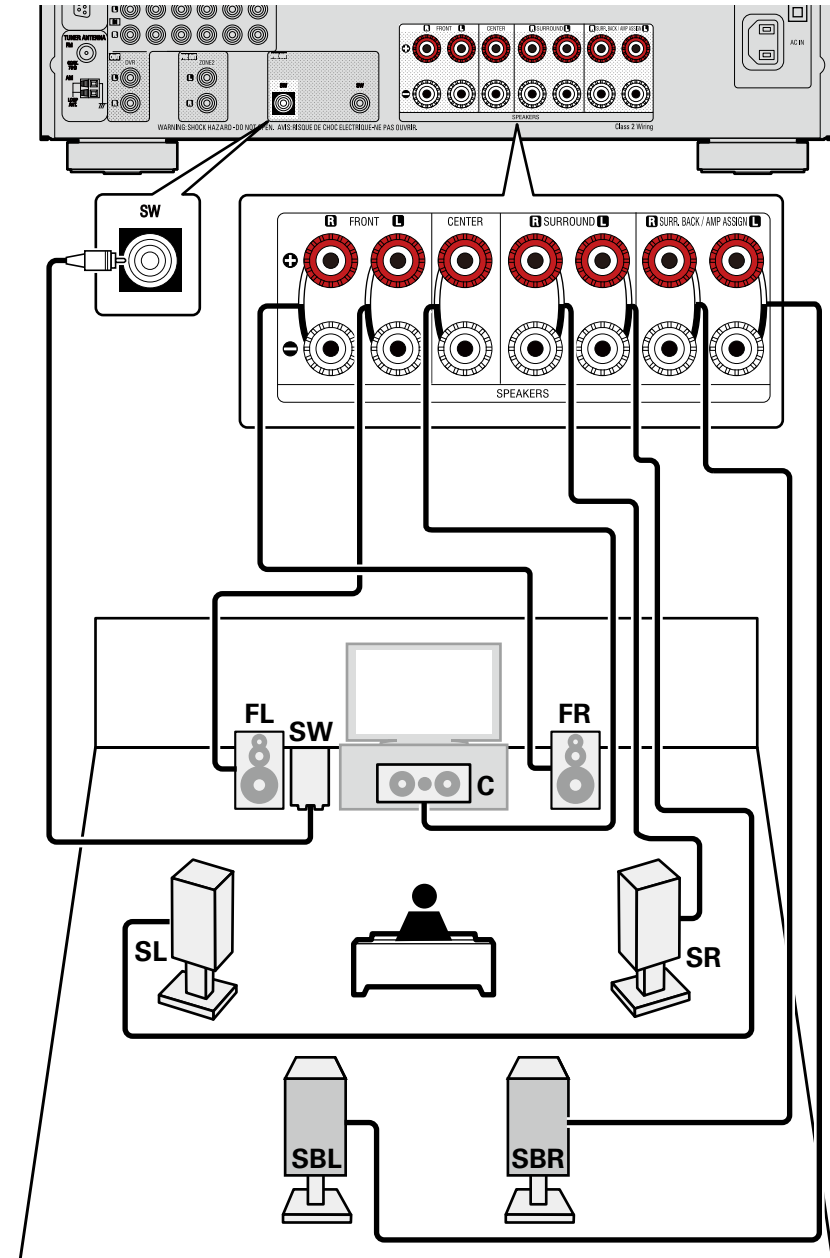
If you connect the surround back and front height speakers before you start playback, the audio is played back by automatically switching the speakers in accordance with the surround mode or input signals.

To perform 7.1-channel playback using the surround back speakers, set “Amp Assign” to “NORMAL” in steps 3 and 4 for “Set up “Amp Assign”” ([page 65](#)).

NOTE

- For speaker cable connections, see [page 6](#) “Connecting the speakers”.
- Connect so that the speaker cable core wires do not protrude from the speaker terminal. The protection circuit may be activated if the core wires touch the rear panel or if the + and – sides touch each other ([page 138](#) “Protection Circuit”).
- Never touch the speaker terminals while the power supply is connected. Doing so could result in electric shock (When the Setup wizard is running, follow the instructions in the Setup wizard screen for making connections.).
- Use speakers with the speaker impedances shown below.

| Speaker terminals | Speaker impedance |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| FRONT | 6 – 16 Ω |
| CENTER | |
| SURROUND | |
| SURR. BACK / AMP ASSIGN | |



7.1-channel (Front height speaker) connection

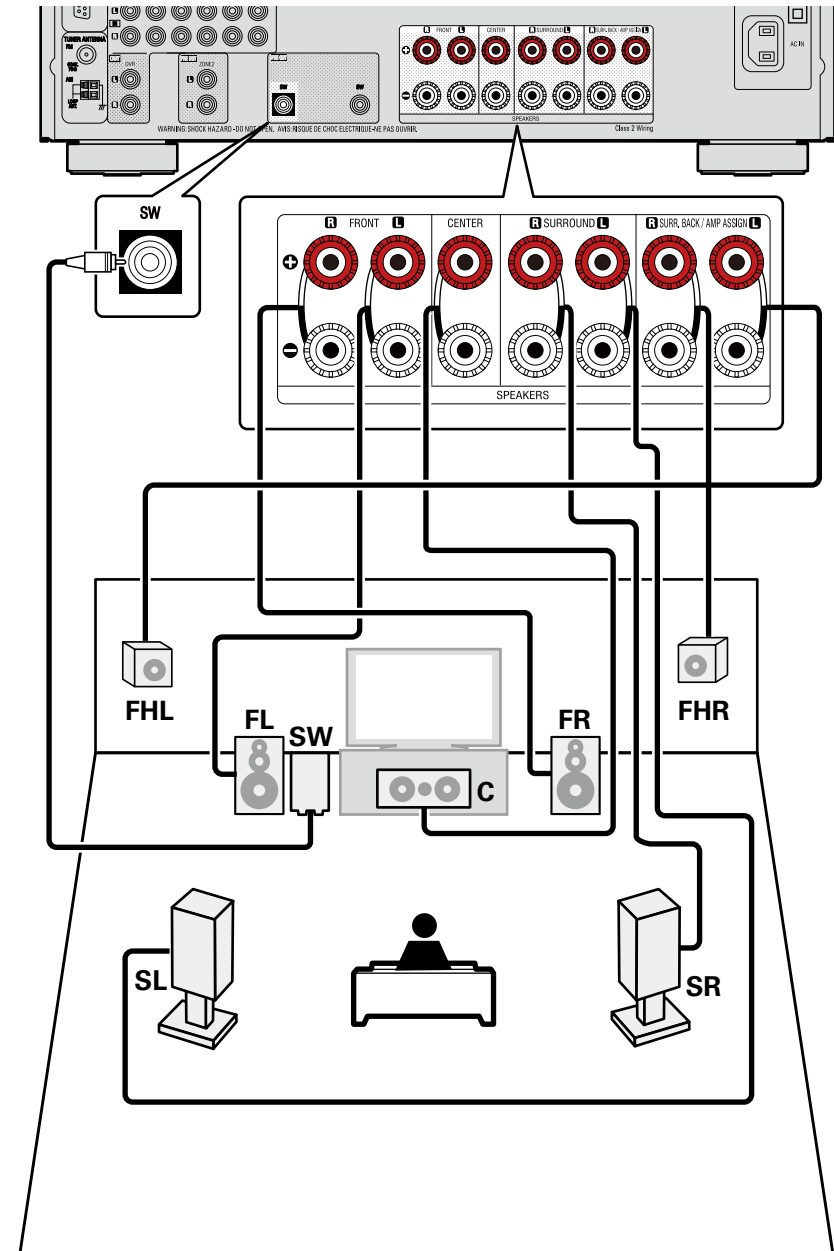
The illustration on the right shows a connection example for performing 7.1-channel playback using the front height speakers.

If you connect the surround back and front height speakers before you start playback, the audio is played back by automatically switching the speakers in accordance with the surround mode or input signals.

To perform 7.1-channel playback using the front height speaker, set "Amp Assign" to "F.Height" in steps 3 and 4 for "Set up "Amp Assign"" (🔗 [page 65](#)).

NOTE

- For speaker cable connections, see 📖 [page 6](#) "Connecting the speakers".
- For speaker impedance, see [page 59](#).



6.1-channel (Surround back speaker) connection

If using only one surround back speaker (with a 6.1-channel connection), connect to the “L” side of the SURR. BACK/AMP ASSIGN terminal.

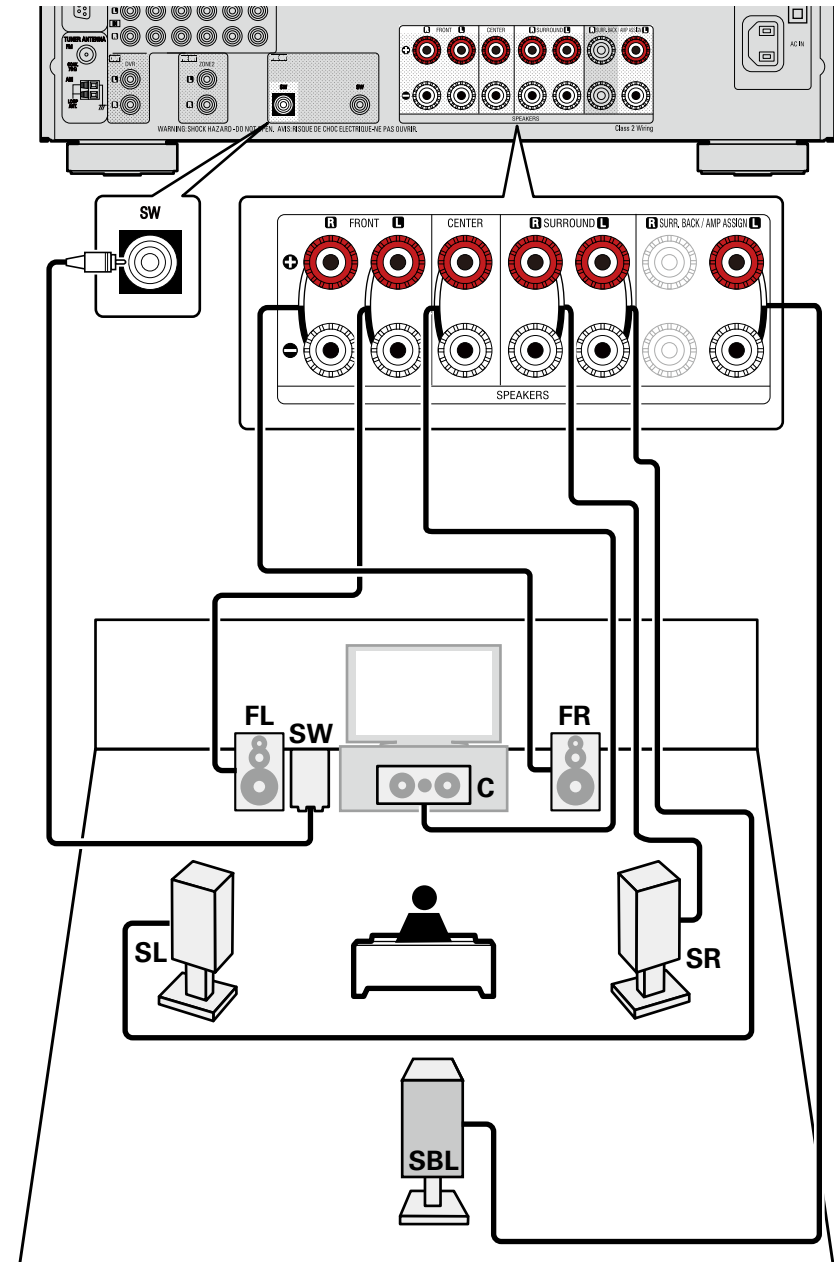
For speaker settings in this case, see “When 6.1ch (Surround back speaker) installed” ([page 58](#)).

To perform 6.1-channel playback using the surround back speaker, set “Amp Assign” to “NORMAL” in steps 3 and 4 for “Set up “Amp Assign”” ([page 65](#)).

Also use the “Speaker Config.” setting ([page 103](#)) to set “Surr.Back” to “1spkr”.

NOTE

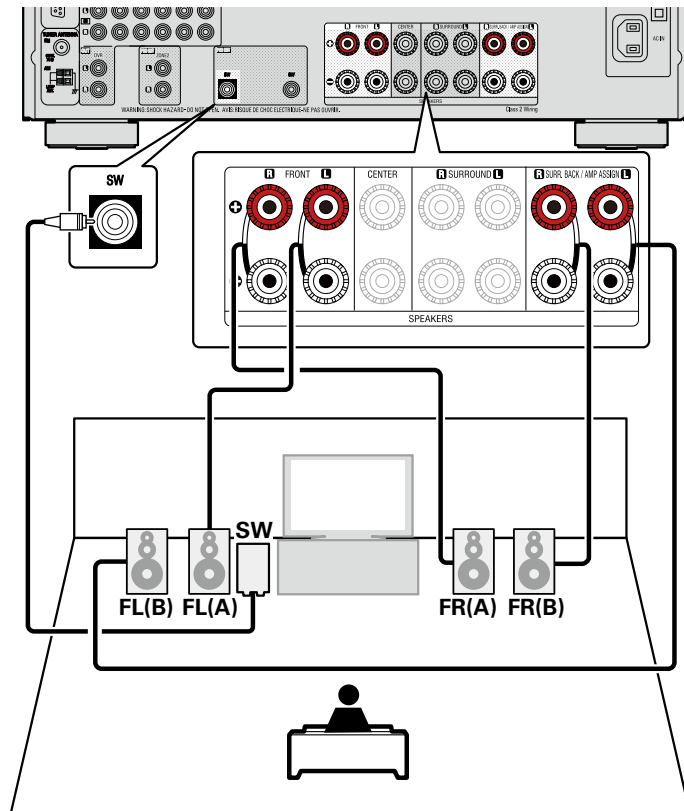
- For speaker cable connections, see [page 6](#) “Connecting the speakers”.
- For speaker impedance, see [page 59](#).



Front A/B connection

You can connect a second set of speakers to this unit and use them for playback.

In this case, set "Amp Assign" to "Front B" in steps 3 and 4 for "Set up "Amp Assign"" ([page 65](#)).



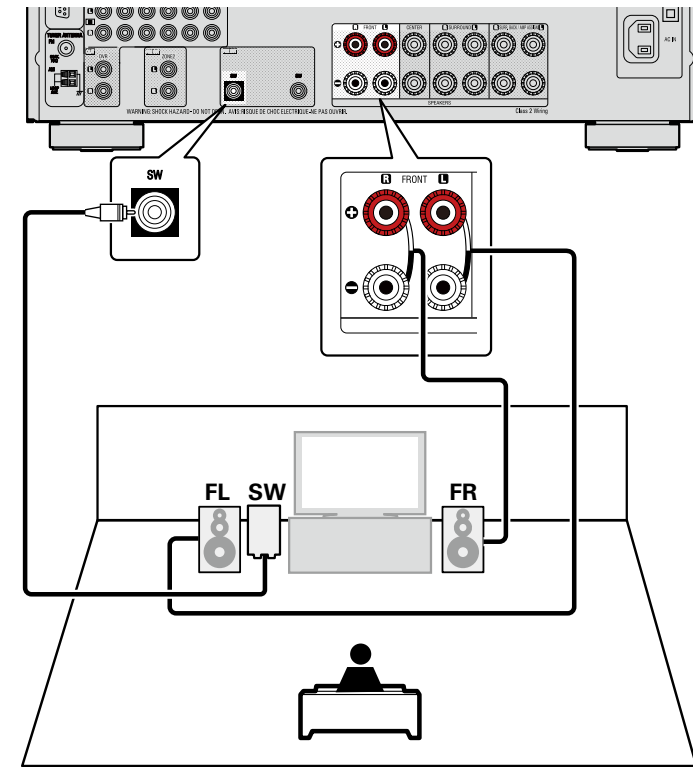
For surround playback of a multichannel source, if you connect the center speaker, surround speakers and subwoofers, 5.1-channel playback is available.

Front speakers can be used separately, depending on the speaker's specifications or playback source such as front speakers (A) for multichannel playback and front speakers (B) for 2-channel playback ([page 105](#) "Front Speaker Setup").

NOTE

- For speaker cable connections, see [page 6](#) "Connecting the speakers".
- For speaker impedance, see [page 59](#).

2.1-channel connection



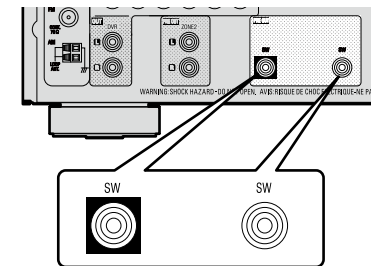
NOTE

- For speaker cable connections, see [page 6](#) "Connecting the speakers".
- For speaker impedance, see [page 59](#).

For connecting two subwoofers

Two subwoofers can be connected to this unit.

The same signal is output from each subwoofer terminal.



Bi-Amp connection

You can use the front speakers via the bi-amp connection.

A bi-amp connection is to connect separate amplifiers to the tweeter terminals and woofer terminals of speakers compatible with the bi-amp function. This prevents the back electromotive force (returned force without output) of the woofer sent to the tweeter, which affects the sound quality of the tweeter, and you can enjoy playback with higher-quality sound.

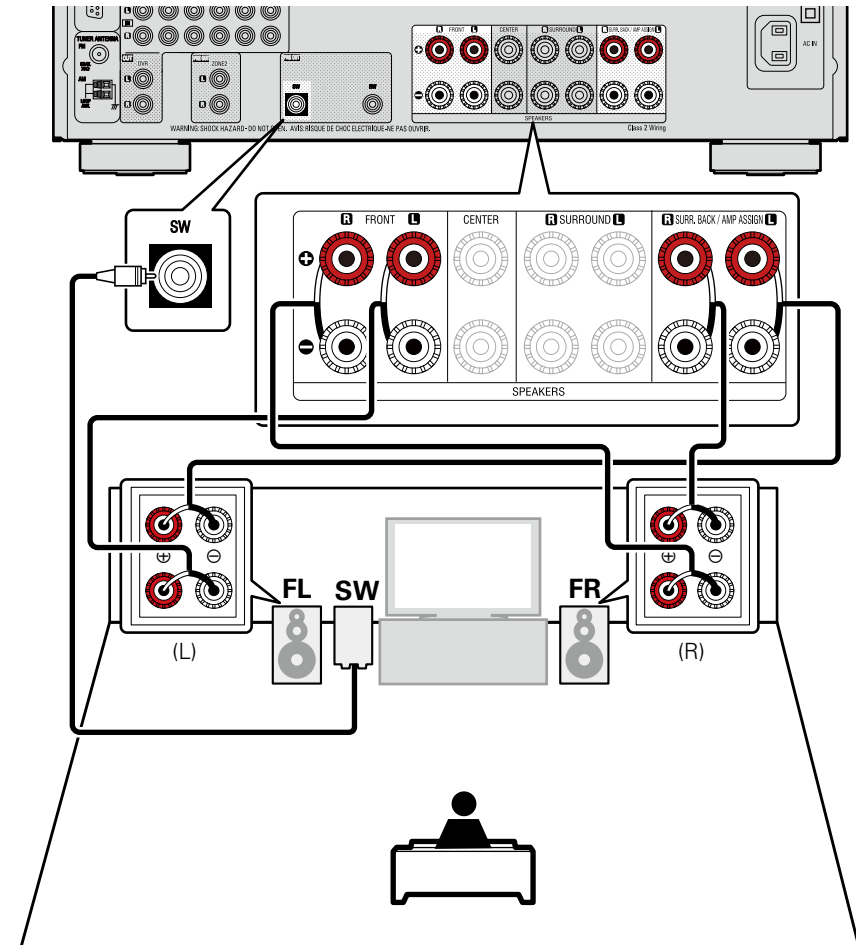
In this case, set "Amp Assign" to "Bi-AMP" in steps 3 and 4 for "Set up "Amp Assign"" (🔗 [page 65](#)).



For surround playback of a multichannel source, if you connect the center speaker, surround speakers and subwoofers, 5.1-channel playback is available.

NOTE

- For speaker cable connections, see [page 6](#) "Connecting the speakers".
- For speaker impedance, see [page 59](#).
- Use speakers compatible with bi-amp connections.
- When making bi-amp connections, be sure to remove the short-circuiting plate or wire between the speaker's woofer and tweeter terminals.



5.1-channel + 2-channel connection

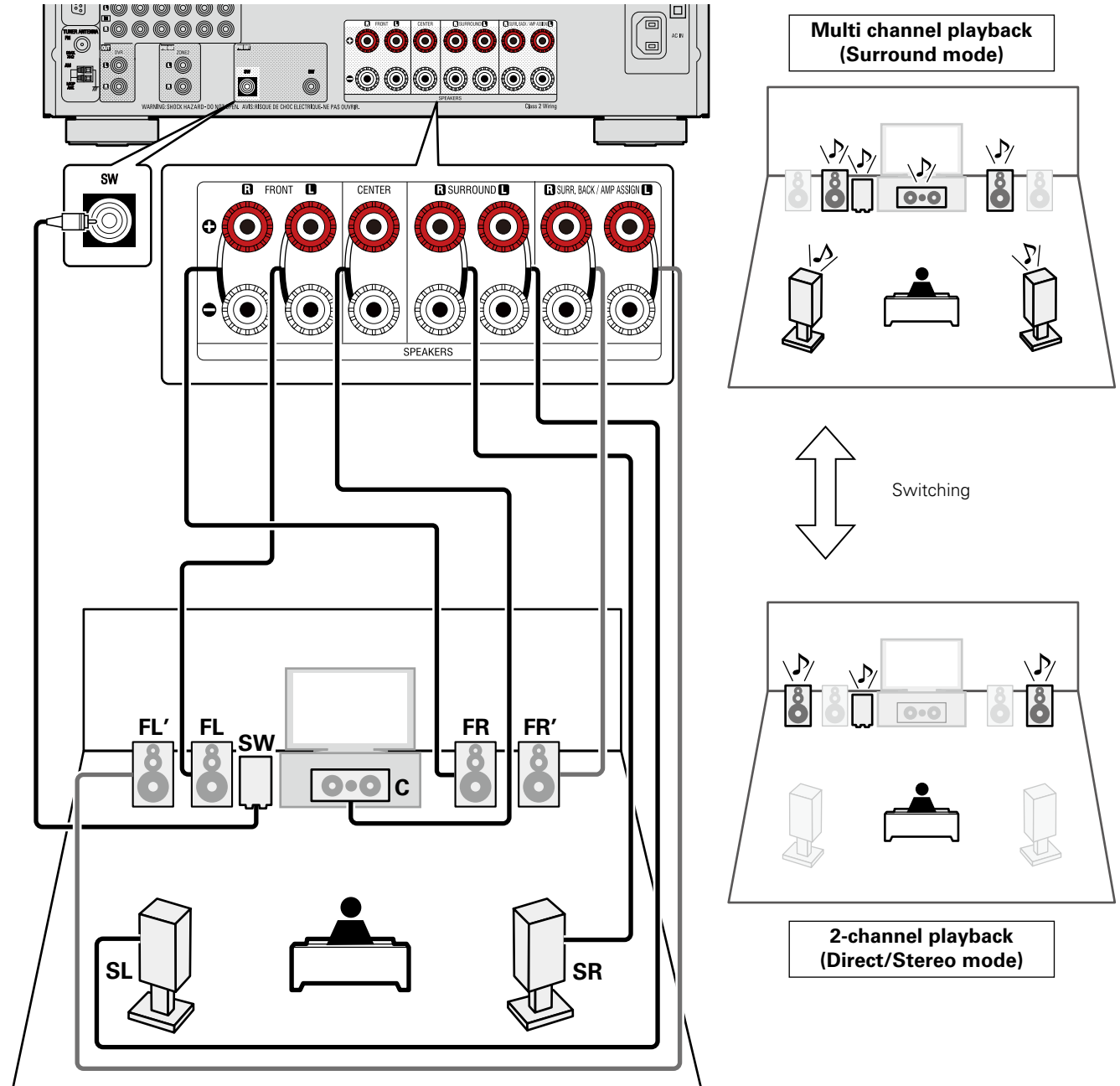
You can connect the other front speakers for 2-channel playback using the DIRECT mode or STEREO mode.

The speakers used exclusively for 5.1-channel playback and the speakers used exclusively for 2-channel playback are automatically switched for playback in accordance with the surround mode.

To set the speakers for automatic switching during playback, select "Amp Assign" and set to "2CH" using steps 3 and 4 of "Set up "Amp Assign"" (see [page 65](#)).

NOTE

- For speaker cable connections, see [page 6](#) "Connecting the speakers".
- For speaker impedance, see [page 59](#).



Set up speakers

 around items indicate the settings.

Here we describe how to set up speakers other than 5.1-channel speakers.
For the method of setting up 5.1-channel speakers, see [page 4 "SETUP WIZARD"](#).

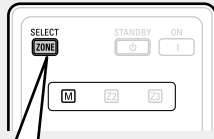
First install and connect the speakers to this unit.

Before Auto Setup measurement, the settings shown below can be made.

- Changing the amplifier assignment (Amp Assign)
The signal output from the SURR.BACK/AMP ASSIGN speaker terminal of this unit can be switched to match your speaker environment ([page 65](#) "Set up "Amp Assign"").
- Setting the channels to be used (Channel Select)
If channels that are not to be used are set in advance, measurement for the set channels is skipped, and measuring time can be reduced. You can also change the number of surround back speakers ([page 66](#) "Set up "Channel Select"").

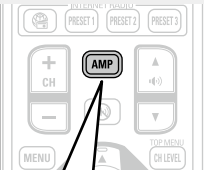
1 Set up the remote control unit

Set up the zone mode
Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch the zone mode to **M (MAIN ZONE)**.
The **M** indicator lights.



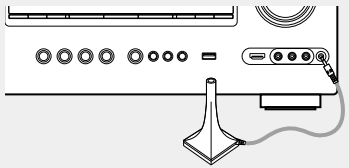
Press ZONE SELECT

Set up the operation mode
Press **AMP** to set the remote control unit to AMP-operation mode.




Press AMP

2 Connect the setup microphone.




When the setup microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.



3 Set up "Amp Assign"

Use Δ / ∇ to select "Amp Assign", and then press **ENTER**.




STEP1 Preparation
Connect the speakers and place them according to the recommendations in the manual. Set the following items if necessary.

Amp Assign
Channel Select
Auto Setup Start

Enter Cancel
Change assigned power amp to match the speaker system

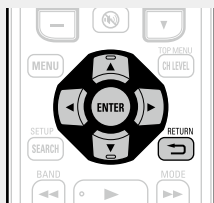
AMP ASSIGN [1/2] DENON

Assign Mode \leftarrow ZONE2 \rightarrow

ZONE2: 

Return
Assign power amp to ZONE2 stereo signal

4 Use \triangleleft \triangleright to select the configuration of the connected speakers.



NORMAL Select the "NORMAL" setting to perform 7.2-channel playback using the surround back or front height speakers.

ZONE2 Select the "ZONE2" setting to assign the unit's built-in power amplifier for ZONE2 and output the audio in stereo.

Bi-AMP Select the "Bi-AMP" setting to connect the front speakers via the bi-amp connection.

2CH When you perform 2-channel playback in the DIRECT or STEREO mode, select the "2CH" setting to use the other front speakers for playback.

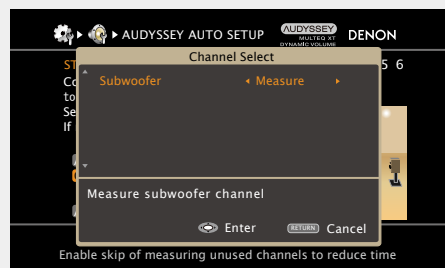
Front B Select the "Front B" setting to use the second set of front speakers for playback.

F.Height Select the "F.Height" setting to use the front height speaker for playback.

5 Press **RETURN** \curvearrowright to exit the "Amp Assign" setting.

6 Set up "Channel Select"

Use \triangle ∇ to select "Channel Select", and then press **ENTER**.



7 Use \triangle ∇ to select a channel.

Front Select for setting the front speakers to be used. In this case, go to step 8.
 • "Front" can be set when "Amp Assign" is set to "Front B".

Subwoofer Select for no subwoofers to be used. In this case, go to step 9.

Surround Back Select the number of surround back speakers to be used. In this case, go to step 10.
 • "Surround Back" can be set when "Amp Assign" is set to "NORMAL".

Front Height Select for no front height speakers to be used. In this case, go to step 11.
 • "Front Height" can be set when "Amp Assign" is set to "F.Height".

8 Press \triangleleft \triangleright to select a front speaker.

A Select this to use front speaker A.

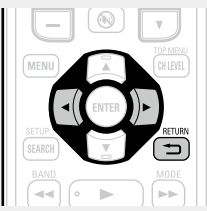
B Select this to use front speaker B.

A+B Select this to use front speakers A and B simultaneously.

9 Use ◀▶ to set whether or not a subwoofer channel is measured.

Measure Set for measuring a subwoofer.

Skip Set for no measuring of a subwoofer.



10 Use ◀▶ to set whether or not a surround back channel is measured.

Measure (2spkr) Set for measuring two surround back speakers.

Measure (1spkr) Set for measuring a surround back speaker.

Skip Set for no measuring of a surround back speaker.

11 Use ◀▶ to set whether or not a front height channel is measured.

Measure Set to measure the front height speakers.

Skip Set when you do not want to measure the front height speakers.

12 Press RETURN ↵.

Proceed to [page 21](#) **STEP1 Preparation** step 6.

NOTE

After performing Audyssey® Auto Setup, do not change the speaker connections or subwoofer volume. In event of a change, perform Audyssey® Auto Setup again.

Playback (Advanced operation)

Settings (🔗 page 19)

Playback (Basic operation) (🔗 page 26)

Selecting a listening mode (SURROUND MODE)
(🔗 page 52)

- ❑ HDMI control function (🔗 page 68)
- ❑ Sleep timer function (🔗 page 69)
- ❑ Adjusting the volume of the speakers
(🔗 page 70)
- ❑ Quick select function (🔗 page 71)
- ❑ REC OUT mode (🔗 page 72)
- ❑ AirPlay (🔗 page 73)
- ❑ Party mode function (🔗 page 74)
- ❑ Zone Management function (🔗 page 75)
- ❑ Operating a media controller to play music and still pictures (🔗 page 76)
- ❑ Web control function (🔗 page 77)
- ❑ Various memory functions (🔗 page 78)

Convenient functions

HDMI control function

If you connect the unit and an HDMI control function compatible TV or player with an HDMI cable and then enable the HDMI control function setting on each device, the devices will be able to control each other.

❑ Operations possible by HDMI control

- This unit power off can be linked to the TV power off step.
- You can switch audio output devices with a TV operation.
When you set "Output audio from amp" in the TV audio output setup operation, you can switch the amp power on.
- You can adjust this unit volume in the TV volume adjustment operation.
- You can switch this unit input sources through linkage to TV input switching.
- When playing the player, this unit input source switches to the source for that player.
- If you switch the input source of the unit to "TV", you can play TV audio with this unit (🔗 page 7 "About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function").
- When "HDMI Control" – "Control" (🔗 page 106) in the menu is set to "ON", signals input to the HDMI input connector are output to the television or other device connected to the HDMI output connector, even if the power of this unit is in standby (pass-through function).



- To play the audio of a TV that does not support the ARC function with the unit, connect the TV with an optical digital connection.
- To use the pass-through function, connect an HDMI connection device that is compatible with HDMI control.

❑ Setting procedure

- 1** Set the HDMI output connector corresponding with the HDMI control function.
Set "HDMI Control" – "Control" (🔗 page 106) to "ON".
- 2** Turn the power on for all the devices connected by HDMI cable.
- 3** Set the HDMI control function for all devices connected by HDMI cable.
 - Please consult the operating instructions for the connected devices to check the settings.
 - Carry out steps 2 and 3 should any of the devices be unplugged.
- 4** Switch the television input to the HDMI input connected to this unit.
- 5** Switch this unit input to the HDMI input source and check if the picture from the player is ok.
- 6** When you turn the TV's power to standby, check that the power of this unit also goes to standby.



If the HDMI control function does not operate properly, check the following points.

- Is the TV or player compatible with the HDMI control function?
- Is "HDMI Control" – "Control" (🔗 page 106) set to "ON"?
- Is "Power Off Control" (🔗 page 106) set to "All" or "Video"?
- Are the HDMI control function settings of all devices correct?

NOTE

- When “HDMI Control” – “Control” is set to “ON”, it consumes more standby power.
- The HDMI control function controls operations of a TV that is compatible with the HDMI control function. Make sure that the TV and HDMI are connected when you perform HDMI control.
- Some functions may not operate depending on the connected TV or player. Check the owner’s manual of each device for details beforehand.
- When “Power Off Control” on the menu is set to “OFF” ([page 106](#)), this unit is not set to standby even if the connected device is in the standby mode.
- When connection changes are implemented, such as adding connections to HDMI devices, linked operations may be initialized. In this case, you will need to reconfigure the settings.
- When “HDMI Control” – “Control” is set to “ON”, it is not possible to assign an HDMI connector to “TV” at “Input Assign” ([page 88](#)).
- Should any of the operations below be performed, the interlocking function may be reset, in which case, repeat steps 2 and 3.
 - “Input Assign” – “HDMI” ([page 88](#)) setting has changed.
 - There is a change to the connection between the devices and the HDMI, or an increase in devices.

Sleep timer function

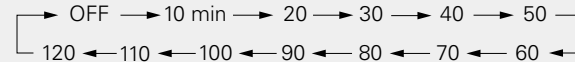
The power automatically goes into standby once the set time has elapsed.

This is convenient for playing sources while going to sleep.

Press SLEEP and display the time you want to set.

The **SLEEP** indicator on the display lights.

- The time switches as shown below each time **SLEEP** is pressed.



- If **SLEEP** on the main unit is pressed, the same function as with the remote control unit can be obtained.

**To confirm the countdown time before putting the unit to sleep**

Press **SLEEP**.

“Sleep : *min” appears on the display.

* Countdown time

To cancel the sleep timer

Press **SLEEP** to set “OFF”.

The **SLEEP** indicator on the display turns off.



- The sleep timer setting is canceled if this unit’s power is set to standby.
- The sleep timer function can be set separately for the different zones ([page 81](#) “Sleep timer function”).

Adjusting the volume of the speakers

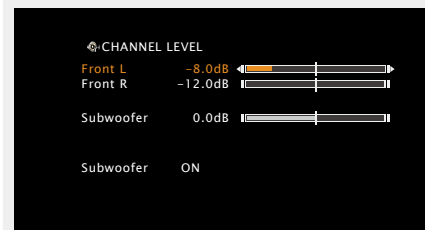
You can adjust the channel level either according to the playback sources or to suit your taste, as described below.

Adjusting the volume of the different speakers

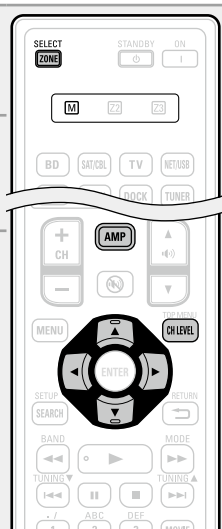
1 Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch the zone mode to **[M]** (MAIN ZONE).
The **[M]** indicator lights.

2 Press **AMP** to set the remote control unit to AMP-operation mode.

3 Press **CH LEVEL**.

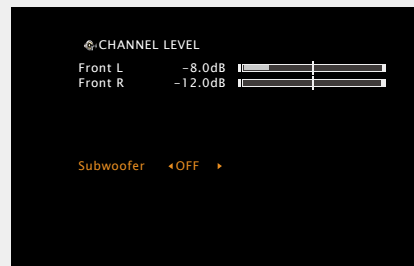


4 Use **△▽** to select the speaker.
The speaker that can be set switches each time one of the buttons is pressed.



5 Use **◀▶** to adjust the volume.

- You can directly turn "OFF" the subwoofer outputs during 2-channel playback in DIRECT or STEREO mode. Select "Subwoofer" and use **◀▶** to select "ON" or "OFF".



When a headphone jack is inserted, the headphone channel level can be adjusted.

Adjusting the volume of groups of speakers (Fader function)

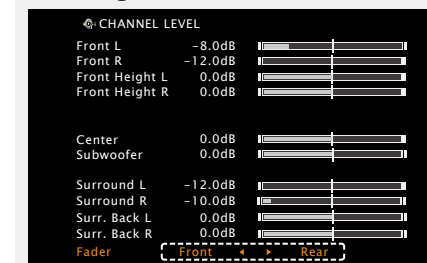
This function lets you adjust (fade) the sound all at once from the front (front speaker / front height speaker / center speaker) or rear (surround speaker / surround back speaker).

1 Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch the zone mode to **[M]** (MAIN ZONE).
The **[M]** indicator lights.

2 Press **AMP** to set the remote control unit to AMP-operation mode.

3 Press **CH LEVEL**.

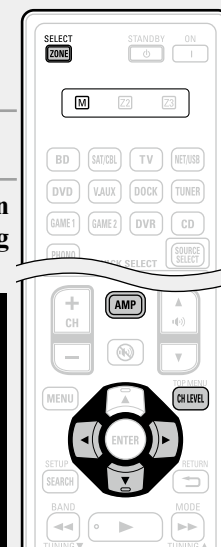
4 Press **▽** to select "Fader", then select the item to be adjusting using **◀▶**.



5 Use **◀▶** to adjust the volume of the speakers.
(◀: front, ▶: rear)



- The fader function does not affect the subwoofer.
- The fader can be adjusted until the volume of the speaker is adjusted to the lowest value of -12 dB.



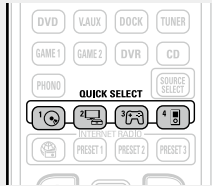
Quick select function

All of the settings in step 1 can be memorized together. By memorizing frequently used settings, you can quickly access and enjoy a playback environment that is consistently the same.

□ Saving the settings

1 Set the items below to the settings you want to save.

- ① Input source* ([page 26](#))
- ② Volume ([page 27](#))
- ③ Surround mode ([page 52](#))
- ④ Video Select ([page 89](#))
- ⑤ Audyssey Settings
(Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume®) ([page 98](#))



* The "NET/USB" source of MAIN ZONE can even memorize the menu screen of each content (Internet Radio, Media Server, iPod/USB, etc.).

2 Press and hold the desired QUICK SELECT until "Memory" appears on the display.

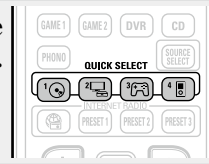
The current settings will be memorized.

[Quick select defaults]

| | Input source | Volume |
|-----------------------|--------------------|--------|
| QUICK SELECT 1 | BD | -40 dB |
| QUICK SELECT 2 | SAT/CBL | -40 dB |
| QUICK SELECT 3 | GAME1 | -40 dB |
| QUICK SELECT 4 | NET/USB (USB/iPod) | -40 dB |

□ Recalling the settings

Press **QUICK SELECT** at which the settings you want to call out are saved.



Naming quick select settings

See "Quick Select Name" ([page 114](#)).



- The Quick Select function can be set separately for the different zones ([page 81](#) "Quick select function").
- If **QUICK SELECT** on the main unit is pressed, the same function as with the remote control unit can be obtained.

NOTE

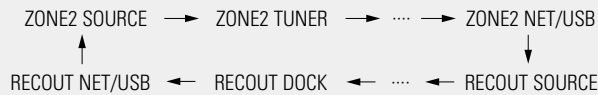
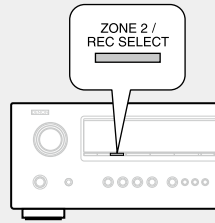
Input sources stored with the quick select function cannot be selected if they have been deleted at "Source Delete" ([page 113](#)). In this case, store them again.

REC OUT mode

When using the audio/video recording connectors (DVR outputs), you can record the audio or video from a different program source while listening to the currently played track.

1 Press **ZONE2 / REC SELECT** until “**RECOUT SOURCE**” is displayed.

The **REC** indicator illuminates.



2 Press **ZONE2 / REC SELECT** to choose the input source to be recorded.

- For operating instructions, refer to the respective device’s operating instructions.

3 Start recording.

- For operating instructions, refer to the respective device’s operating instructions.



- To cancel, press **ZONE2 / REC SELECT** until “ZONE2 SOURCE” is displayed.
- Make a test recording before starting the actual recording.
- The digital signal input into the HDMI, COAXIAL, and OPTICAL connectors is not output from the analog REC OUT connector.
- Sources selected with the REC OUT mode are output from ZONE2 as well.
- The operable buttons on the remote control unit in REC OUT mode while it is in the operating mode for ZONE2 are as follows:
 - ZONE/DEVICE power button
 - Muting button
 - Master volume control button

NOTE

- Recordings you make are for your personal enjoyment and should not be used for other purposes without permission of the copyright holder.
- Input sources for which “Delete” is selected at “Source Delete” ([page 113](#)) cannot be selected.

AirPlay

Enjoy music from your iTunes library with DENON quality sound anywhere in your home.

Use the Apple Remote app* for iPhone, iPod touch and iPad to control iTunes from any room in your home.

* Available as a free download from the App Store.


Setting procedure

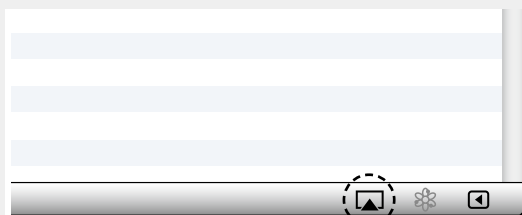
1 Install iTunes 10, or later, on a Mac or Windows PC that is connected to the same network as this unit.

2 Turn this unit ON.
Set "Network Standby" to "ON" for this unit.

NOTE

When "Network Standby" is set to "ON", the unit consumes more standby power.

3 Launch iTunes and click the AirPlay icon  displayed in the lower right of the window and select this unit from the list.



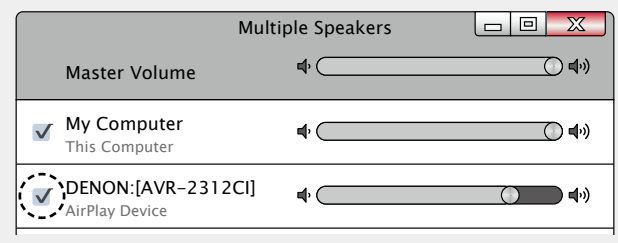
4 Choose a song and click play in iTunes.
The music will stream to this unit.

Multiple Speakers

You can easily stream music from iTunes to multiple speakers in your home.

1 Click the AirPlay icon  and select "Multiple Speakers" from the list.

2 Check the speakers you want to use.

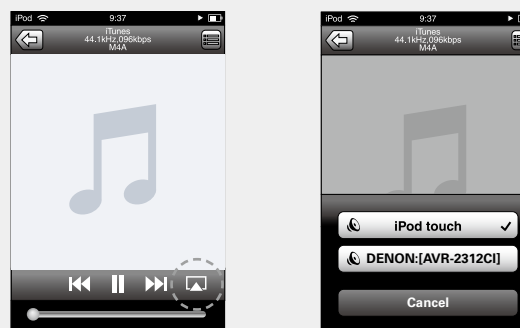


Streaming music stored in iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad directly to the unit

If you update your "iPhone/iPod touch/iPad" to iOS 4.2.1 or later, you can stream music stored in your "iPhone/iPod touch/iPad" directly to this unit.

1 Tap the AirPlay icon .

2 Select the speaker you want to use.

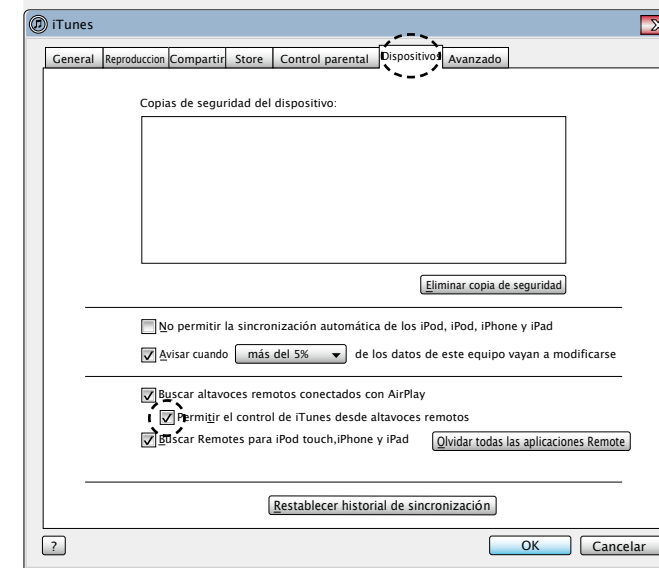



Remote operations

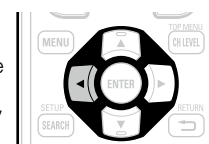
You can use your DENON remote control to play and pause iTunes, as well as skip to next and previous tracks.

1 Open Preferences in iTunes, and click "Devices".

2 Check "Allow iTunes control from remote speakers".



-  is displayed on the menu screen while AirPlay is being operated.
- Source input will be switched to "NET/USB" when AirPlay playback is started.
- You can stop AirPlay playback by pressing the < or choosing other input source.
- To see song and artist names together, press **STATUS** on the main unit.
- For information about how to use iTunes, also see the Help for iTunes.
- The screen may differ depending on the OS and software versions.



Party mode function

The same network audio (Internet radio, Media server or iPod DIRECT) can be played on multiple DENON products equipped with the Party Mode function and connected in a network.

The party mode consists of one organizer and up to four attendees. When one unit starts the party mode as the organizer, up to four devices on which the party mode function is activated automatically participate in the party as attendees. "Party Mode Function" (page 110) must be set to "ON" ahead of time in order to use the party mode function.

Starting the party mode as the organizer

1 Press PARTY to become the organizer.

"Enter Party Mode?" is displayed.

- An error message is displayed when you are not connected to a network.

2 Press ◀▶ to select "Yes", then press ENTER.

- The input source automatically switches to "NET/USB" and the attendees are automatically selected.

- When a device becomes an organizer, **PARTY ORGANIZER** appears on the display.

3 Play the desired track.



Canceling the party mode

1 While in the party mode, press PARTY.

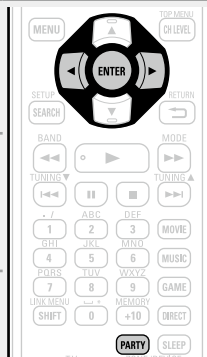
"Exit Party Mode?" is displayed on the menu screen.

2 Press ◀▶ to select "Yes", then press ENTER.

"Power off attendees component?" is displayed.

3 Press ◀▶ to select "Yes" or "No", then press ENTER.

- Yes** The power of the attendees is turned off and the party mode is canceled.
- No** The party mode is canceled without turning off the power of the attendees.



Participating in the party mode as an attendee

- When the organizer starts the party mode, up to four attendees are selected automatically. No operation is required.
- When a device becomes an attendee, **PARTY ATTENDEE** appears on the display.

The input source automatically switches to "NET/USB" and the same network audio as on the organizer is played.

- If there are fewer than four attendees, a device can join the party mode after it has started. To participate in the party mode, perform the operation described below.

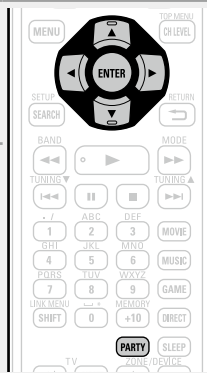
1 Press PARTY.

"Enter Party Mode?" is displayed.

- An error message is displayed when you are not connected to a network.

2 Press ◀▶ to select "Yes", then press ENTER.

When you start the party mode, the monitor of the attendee (child) displays the network menu screen for the organizer (parent).



3 Press ▲▼◀▶ and ENTER to select the desired track.



The party mode function can only be used on a combination of DENON devices that are equipped with the party mode function.

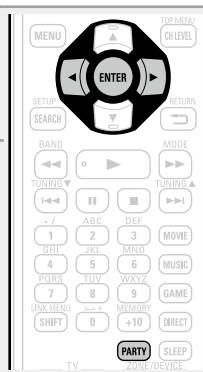
Canceling the party mode

1 While in the party mode, press PARTY.

"Exit Party Mode?" is displayed on the menu screen.

2 Press ◀▶ to select "Yes", then press ENTER.

In this case, the other devices remain in the party mode.



"Flickr", "Napster", "Pandora", "Rhapsody" and "USB" are not available in the Party Mode.

There can only be one organizer in the network. To form a new party mode, first cancel the current party mode.

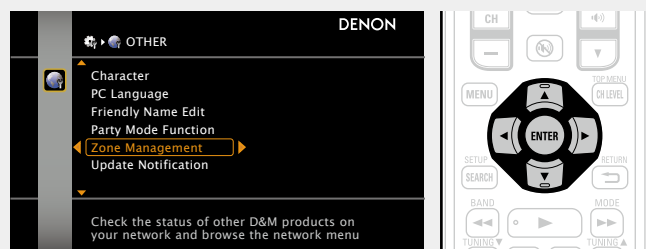
Zone Management function

The status of devices connected to the same network can be displayed. Additionally, network menu browsers and volume controls can be performed via the network for the connected devices. This is useful when playing back network services of a device located in a separate room.

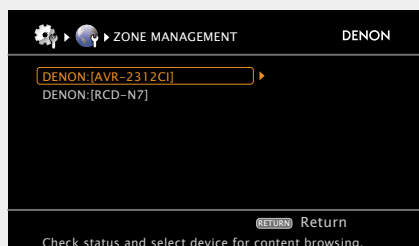


Only devices compatible with the Zone Management function can be operated. With the Zone Management function, the network menu screen and playback screen of the target device to be controlled are displayed but playback with this unit is not possible. If you also want to play the same music as the other device, use the Party Mode function.

- 1 Press Δ / ∇ to select “Network Setup” – “Other” – “Zone Management” from the menu, and then press **ENTER** or \triangleright .



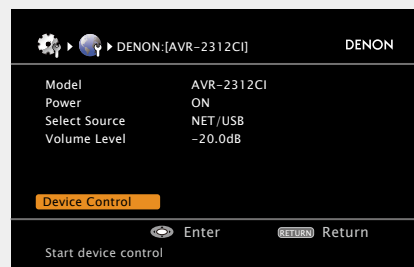
- 2 Press Δ / ∇ to select the Friendly Name of the device, and then press **ENTER** or \triangleright .



- Displays up to a maximum of 10 DENON products connected on the same network.

- 3 Press Δ / ∇ to select “Device Control”, and then press **ENTER**.

When the device control mode is started, the network menu of the connected device is displayed on this unit’s television screen.



NOTE

- If the selected device is compatible with the Zone Management function, “Device Control” mode starts.
- If the selected device is in Party Mode or being controlled with Zone Management, “Device Control” is not displayed.

- 4 Press Δ / ∇ / \triangleleft / \triangleright and **ENTER** to select the desired track.



- When in device control mode, **REMOTE CONTROL** is displayed on the television screen of the controlling device, and **REMOTE** is displayed on the television screen of the device being controlled.



The zone management function can only be used on a combination of DENON devices that are equipped with the zone management function.

NOTE

- The volume of the selected device can be controlled using **CH +** (volume up) and **CH -** (volume down) of this unit, but the volume level is not displayed. Be careful not to increase the volume too high.
- For services that require an account, set the account settings on the target device in advance. Also, some functions of the device may be restricted in “Device Control” mode.

To end “Device Control” mode

- 1 Press **MENU** in “Device Control” mode.

“Exit Device Control mode?” is displayed on the TV screen.

- 2 Press \triangleleft / \triangleright to select “Yes”, then press **ENTER**.

“Power off Remote component?” is displayed on the TV screen.

- 3 Press \triangleleft / \triangleright to select “Yes” or “No”, then press **ENTER**.

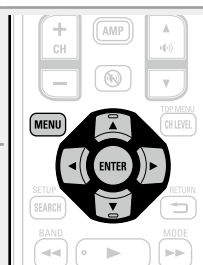
Yes Turns off the target device and ends “Device Control” mode.

No Ends “Device Control” mode without turning off the power of the target device.



“Device Control” mode can also be ended from the controlled device side.

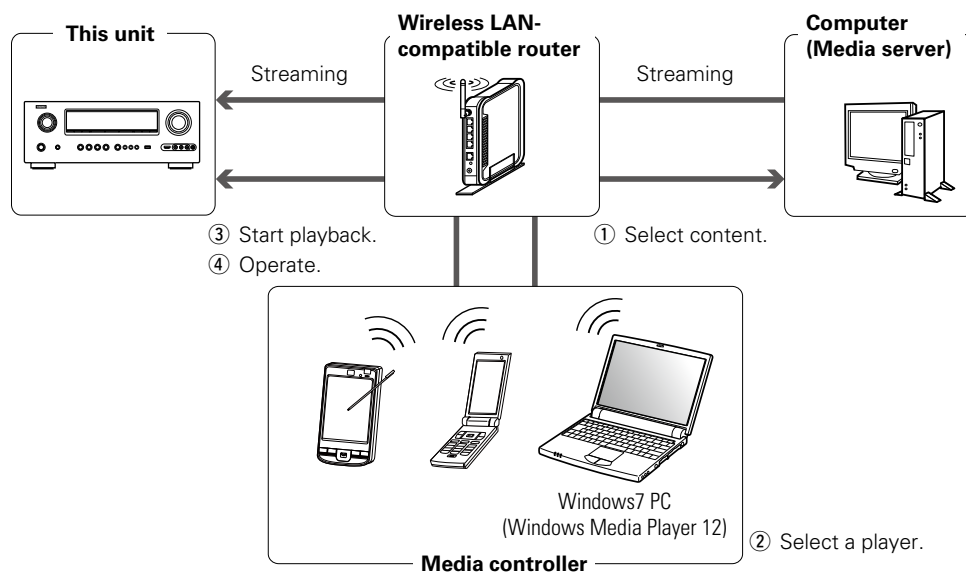
- ① Press **MENU** on the controlled device.
- ② When “Exit Device Control Mode?” is displayed on the TV screen, select “Yes” and then press **ENTER**.



Operating a media controller to play music and still pictures

- Perform this procedure using a media controller conforming to the DLNA (Digital Living Network Alliance) standard.
- This function allows you to play content located on a computer (media server) or connected on a network by operating a media controller on the same network.
- There are two types of operations on the media controller.

□ Playing content on a computer (Media server)

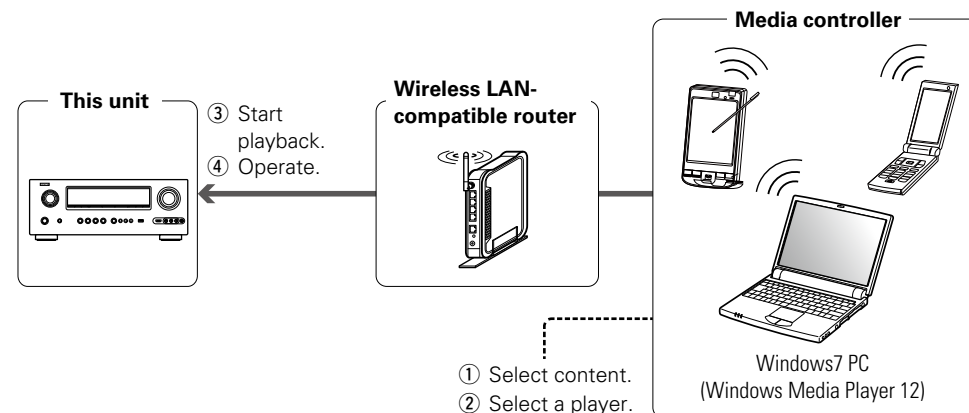


1 From the media controller, browse the media server on the same network and choose the content you want to play.

2 From the media controller, select this unit from among the products on the network. Playback of the content selected in step 1 begins.

- When selecting this unit from the media controller, the name of this unit is displayed at “Friendly Name” (☞ page 110 “Friendly Name Edit”).
- The following operations are possible from the media controller:
 - File operations (play, stop, pause, track search)
 - Play mode settings (repeat/random)
 - Volume adjustment

□ Playing contents on a media controller




1 Select the content you want to play from among the media controller.

2 From the media controller, select this unit from among the products on the network. Playback of the content selected in step 1 begins.

- When selecting this unit from the media controller, the name of this unit is displayed at “Friendly Name” (☞ page 110 “Friendly Name Edit”).
- The following operations are possible from the media controller:
 - File operations (play, stop, pause, track search)
 - Play mode settings (repeat/random)
 - Volume adjustment



-  is displayed on the menu screen while the media controller is being operated.
- For the various settings and operating procedures, see the operating instructions of the media controller being used.
- When selecting this unit from the media controller, the name of this unit is displayed at “Friendly Name”. “Friendly Name” can be edited at “Friendly Name Edit” (☞ page 110) as desired so that it is easily distinguishable from other devices.
- When playback is started from the media controller, this unit’s input source automatically switches to “NET/USB”. Also, when the “Network Standby” setting (☞ page 110) is set to “ON”, the power automatically turns on.

NOTE

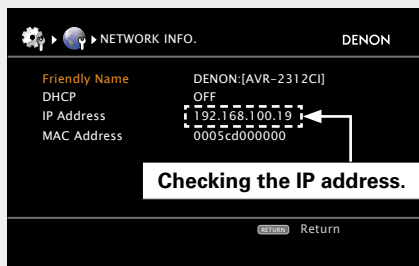
When operations related to browsing or playback (play, stop, pause, track search) are performed on this unit while operating the media controller, the connection to the network is disconnected. The network connection is also disconnected when the party mode is started.

Web control function

You can operate this unit using a browser.

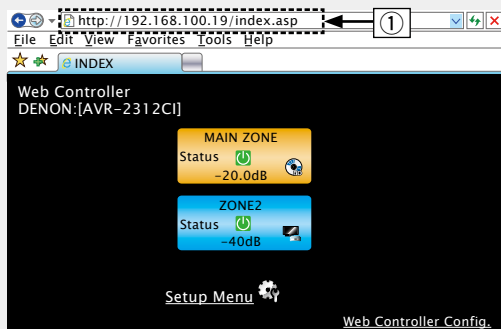
1 Switch the “Network Standby” setting to “ON”. (☞ [page 110](#)).

2 Check the IP address of this unit with “Network Info.” (☞ [page 111](#)).



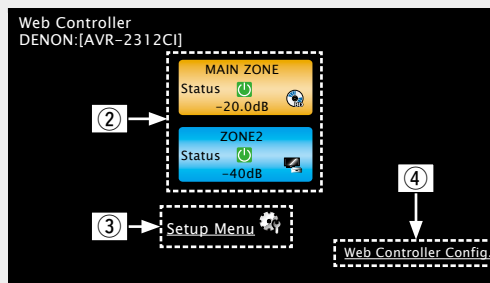
3 Enter the IP address of this unit in browser’s address box.

For example, if the IP address of this unit is “192.168.100.19”, enter “http://192.168.100.19/”.



① Entering the IP address.

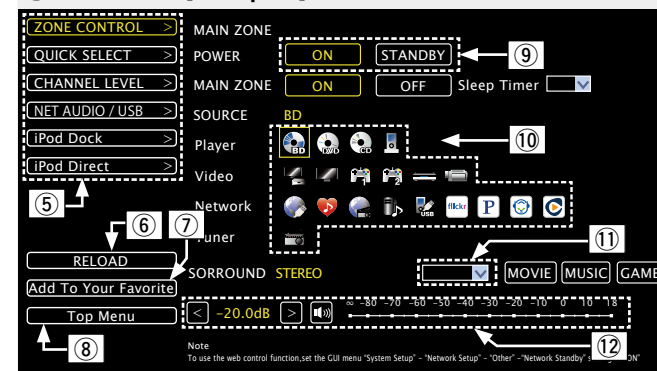
4 When the top menu is displayed, click on the menu item you want to operate.



- ② Click when you operate each zone. (☞ [Example 1](#))
- ③ Click when you operate the setup menu. (☞ [Example 2](#))
- ④ Click to change the Web control screen setting. (☞ [Example 3](#))

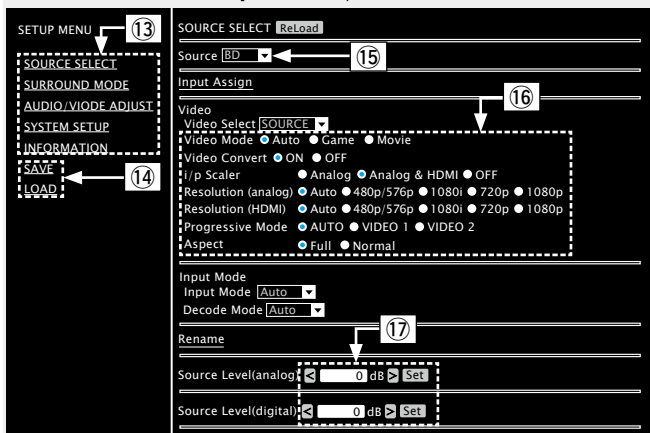
5 Operate.

[Example 1] Main zone control screen



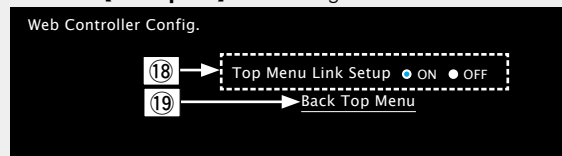
- ⑤ Click to perform individual operations. Changes to individual operation screens. (☞ [Example 4](#))
- ⑥ Click when you update to the latest information. Normally, there is a change to the latest information each time you operate. When operating from the main unit, click this or else the screen will not be updated.
- ⑦ Click to add a setting to “Favorites” in your browser. We recommend registering the setting screens for the different zones in the browser’s favorites so as not to accidentally perform menu operations for zones you do not intend to operate.
- ⑧ Click to return to the top menu. Displayed when setting “Top Menu Link Setup” to “ON” in [Example 3](#)
- ⑨ Click when you perform a power operation of the unit.
- ⑩ Click an icon to change the input source.
- ⑪ Click “v” and then select a surround mode from the displayed items.
- ⑫ To adjust the main volume, click “<”, “>”, or the volume display.

[Example 2] Setup menu screen



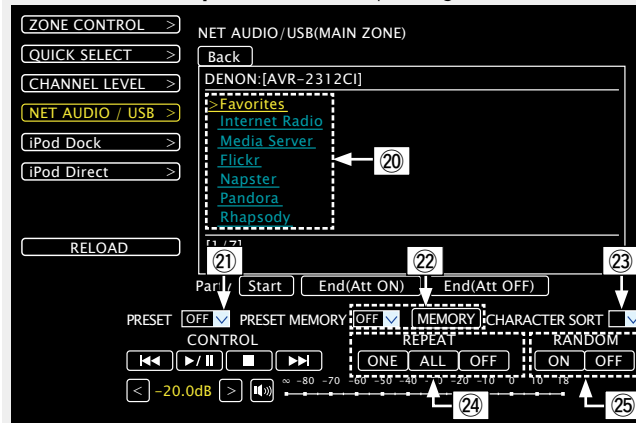
- 13 Click the menu item from which you want to make settings. The display on the right becomes the individual setting screens.
- 14 Click "SAVE" when you want to save settings, and click "LOAD" when you want to call settings.
- 15 Click "v" and select from the displayed items.
- 16 Click an item to make a setting.
- 17 Enter figures or click "<" or ">" to make the setting, and then click "Set".

[Example 3] Web configuration screen



- 18 Click "ON" when performing Top Menu Link Setup. When set up, return to the top menu from each operation screen. (Default setting : "OFF")
- 19 Click this item to return to the top menu.

[Example 4] Net Audio operating screen



- 20 Click the menu items from which you want to play.
- 21 Click "v" to select the preset channel you want to play.
- 22 When registering presets, click "v" to select the channel you want to register, and then click "MEMORY".
- 23 When searching using an acronym, click "v" and select from the displayed characters.
- 24 Click this item to play back repeatedly.
- 25 Click this item to play back randomly.

Various memory functions

Personal memory plus function

This function sets the settings (input mode, surround mode, HDMI output mode, MultEQ® XT, Dynamic EQ®, audio delay etc.) last selected for the individual input sources.



The surround parameters, tone settings and the volumes of the different speakers are stored for the individual surround modes.

Last function memory

This function stores the settings which were made before going into the standby mode.

When the power is turned back on, the settings are restored.

Playback in ZONE2 (Separate room)

- You can operate this unit so as to enjoy audio in a room (ZONE2) other than the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located).
- You can simultaneously play back the same source in both the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2. You can also play back separate sources in the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2.



The source selected for ZONE2 is also output from the recording output connectors.

Audio output

There are two methods to do this, as described below. Choose one of the methods.

- ① Zone playback by speaker output
- ② Zone playback by audio output (PRE OUT)
Use an external amplifier.

① Zone playback by speaker output

The ZONE2 audio signals are output from this unit's SURR.BACK/AMP ASSIGN speaker terminals using the amplifier assignment function.

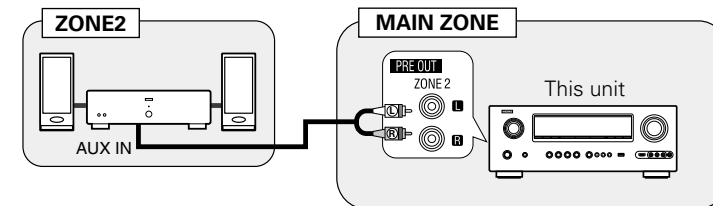
▣ Connecting and setting the speakers

| | "Amp Assign" setting (☞ page 102) and audio signals output | Connecting the speakers |
|-------|--|-------------------------|
| ZONE2 | <p>ZONE2 Output signal : Stereo (L / R)</p> | |

② Zone playback by audio output (PRE OUT)

▣ Audio connections (ZONE2)

The audio signals of this unit's ZONE2 audio output terminals are output to the ZONE2 amplifiers and played on these amplifiers.



We recommend using high quality pin-plug cables for audio connections in order to prevent noise.

NOTE

- It is not possible to play the digital audio signals input from the HDMI, COAXIAL or OPTICAL connectors in ZONE2.
Use analog connections for ZONE2 playback.
- When certain digital signals are being input, noise may be output from the ZONE2 audio output connectors.

Playback

1 Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch the zone mode to **[Z2]** (ZONE2).

2 Press **AMP** to set the remote control unit to AMP-operation mode.

3 Press **ZONE/DEVICE 1** to turn on the ZONE2 power.

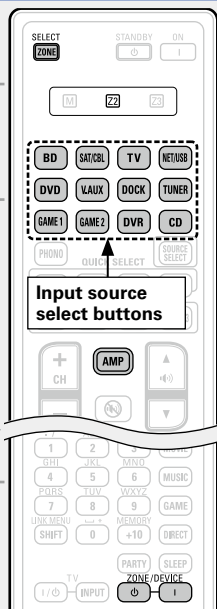
The **[Z2]** indicator on the display lights.

- Also press input source select button when in standby mode, the power turns on.
- When **ZONE/DEVICE 1** is pressed, ZONE2 turns off.
- Power in ZONE2 can be turned on or off by pressing **ZONE2 ON/OFF** on the main unit.

4 Press the input source select button.

The audio signal of the selected source is output to ZONE2.

- To perform an operation with the main unit, press **ZONE2 / REC SELECT** many times.



Adjusting the volume

Use **[Mute]** **[Volume Up]** **[Volume Down]** to adjust the volume.



[Adjustable range] --- **-80dB** -- **-40dB** -- **18dB**

(When the "Volume Display" ([page 113](#)) setting is "Relative")

[Adjustable range] **0** - **41** - **99**

(When the "Volume Display" ([page 113](#)) setting is "Absolute")

- At time of purchase, "Volume Limit" ([page 112](#)) is set to "-10dB (71)".



Turn **MASTER VOLUME** after pressing **ZONE2 / REC SELECT** on the main unit to adjust the sound volume.

Turning off the sound temporarily

Press **[Mute]**.

The sound is reduced to the level set at "Mute Level" ([page 112](#)) in the menu.

- To cancel, either adjust the volume or press **[Mute]** again.
- The setting is canceled when the zone's power is turned off.



You can adjust the tone and volume for ZONE2 in "ZONE2 Setup" ([page 112](#)) in the menu.



When power for both MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 is set to ON, power of the MAIN ZONE only can be turned off. Select **[M]** (MAIN ZONE) in step 1 then press **ZONE/DEVICE 1**.

Quick select function

It is also possible to save four settings for ZONE2.

□ Saving the settings

1 Set the items below to the settings you want to save.

- ① Input source (☞ page 80)
- ② Volume (☞ page 80)

NOTE

The settings for each content (Internet Radio, Media Server, iPod, etc.) cannot be memorized for the “NET/USB” source of ZONE2.

2 Press ZONE SELECT to switch the zone mode to Z2 (ZONE2).

3 In the zone mode for which you want to operate, press and hold the desired QUICK SELECT until “Memory” appears on the display.

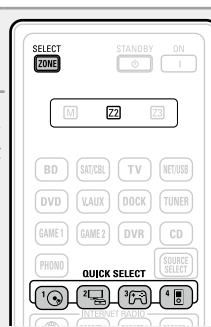
The current settings will be memorized.



□ Recalling the settings

1 Press ZONE SELECT to switch the zone mode to Z2 (ZONE2).

2 Press QUICK SELECT at which the settings you want to call out are saved.



Naming quick select settings

See “Quick Select Name” (☞ page 114).

[Quick select defaults]

| | Input source | Volume |
|----------------------|--------------|--------|
| ZONE2 QUICK SELECT 1 | BD | -40dB |
| ZONE2 QUICK SELECT 2 | SAT/CBL | -40dB |
| ZONE2 QUICK SELECT 3 | - | -40dB |
| ZONE2 QUICK SELECT 4 | NET/USB | -40dB |

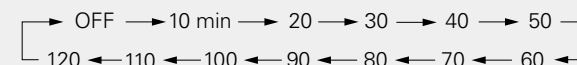
Sleep timer function

This is useful when you want to sleep while listening in ZONE2.

1 Press ZONE SELECT to switch the zone mode to Z2 (ZONE2).

2 Press SLEEP and display the time you want to set.

- The time switches as shown below each time SLEEP is pressed.



- If SLEEP on the main unit is pressed, the same function as with the remote control unit can be obtained.

To confirm the countdown time before putting the unit to sleep

Press SLEEP.

“Z2 Sleep : *min” appears on the display.

* Countdown time

To cancel the sleep timer

Press SLEEP to set “OFF”.

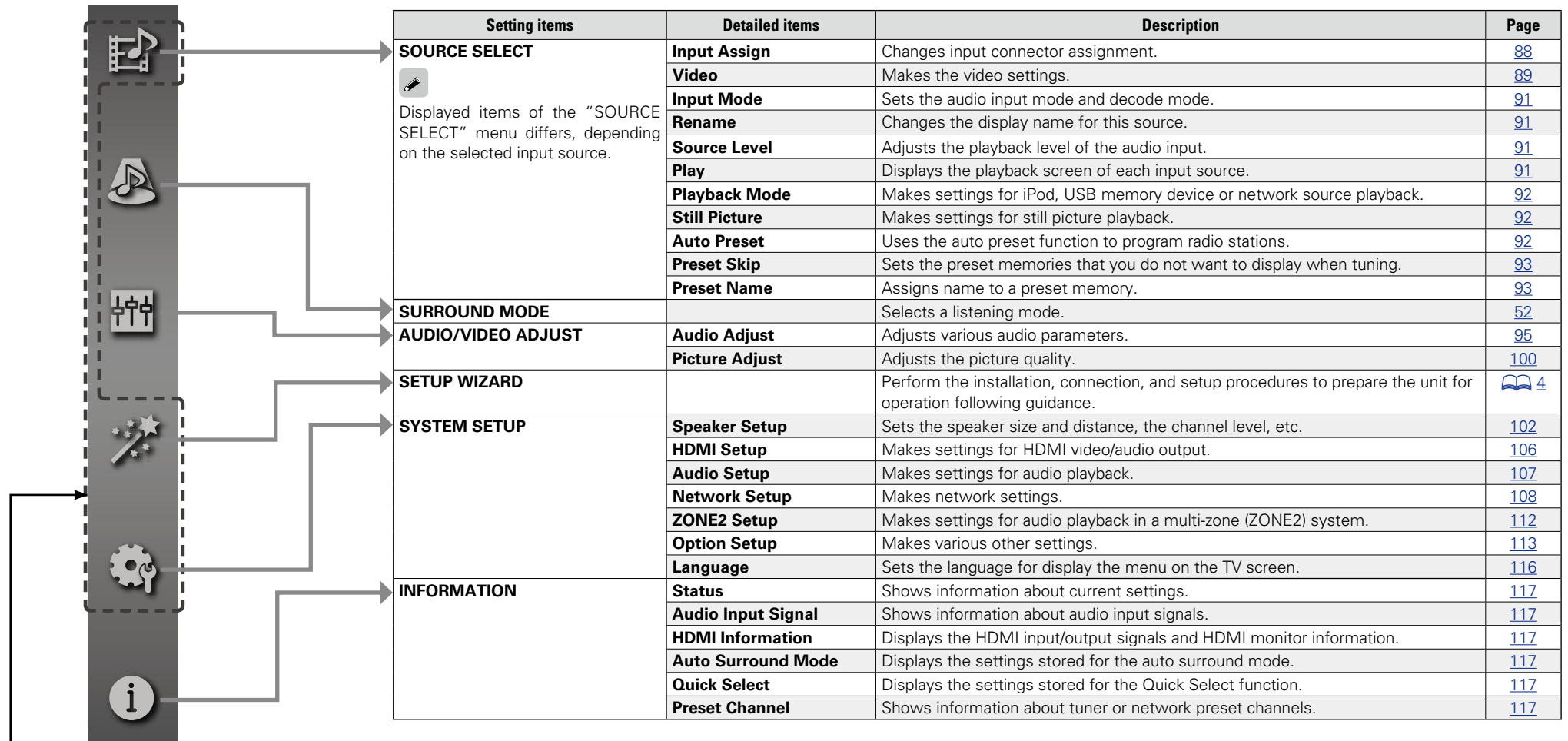


The sleep timer is also canceled when this unit is set to the standby mode or the ZONE2 power is turned off.

How to make detailed settings

Menu map

For menu operation, connect a TV to this unit and display the menu on the TV screen. For menu operations, see the following page.



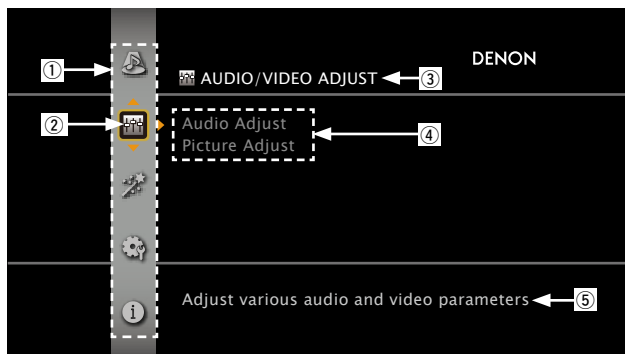
Items that only need to be set once

Set these for example upon purchase. Once these items are set, there is no need to set them again unless the speaker layout or the connected speakers have been changed.

Examples of menu screen displays

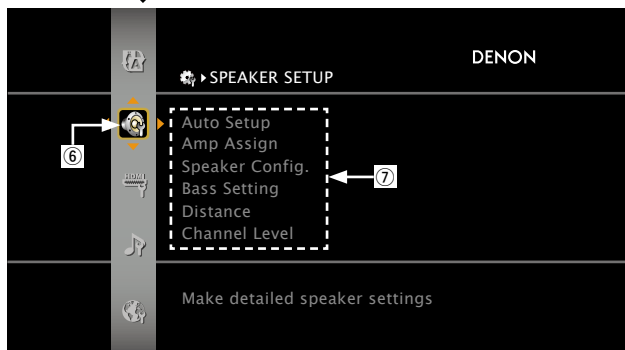
Typical examples are described below.

[Example 1] Menu selection screen (Top menu)



- ① List of GUI menu setup icons
- ② Currently selected setup icon
- ③ Currently selected setup item
- ④ List of currently selected setup subcategory
- ⑤ Guide text for the currently selected setup item

Press ∇ to select "⚙️" and then press \triangleright . (Or press ENTER.)



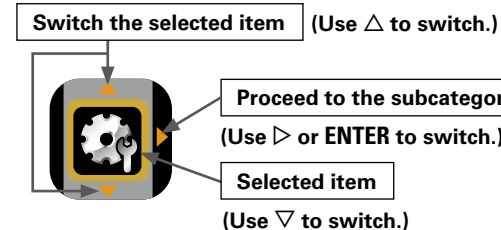
- ⑥ Selected setup item
- ⑦ Options of the selected setup icon

[Example 2] Audyssey® Auto Setup screen (with illustration)

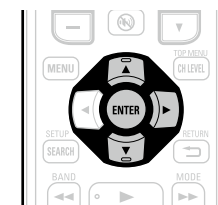
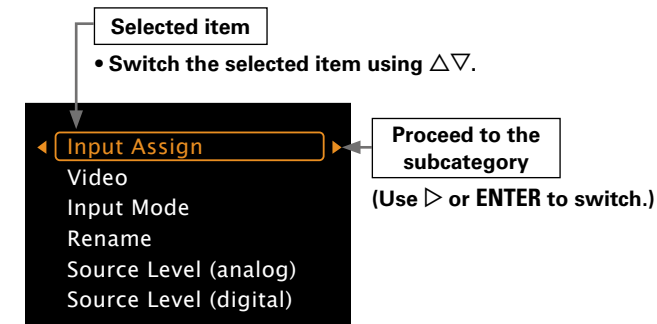


- ⑧ History icon
- ⑨ Operation guidance text
- ⑩ Operation step indicators
- ⑪ Illustration
- ⑫ Operation button guidance
- ⑬ Guide text for the currently selected setup item

Icon


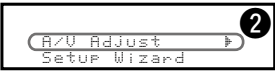
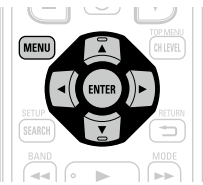
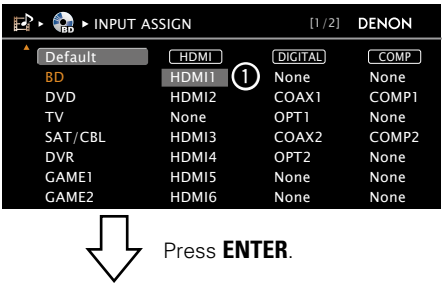
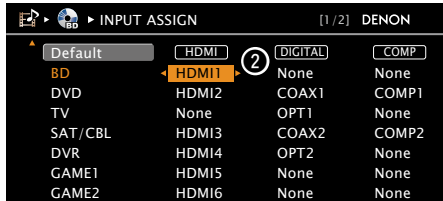
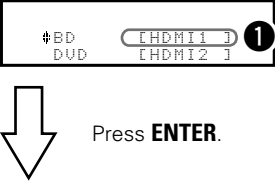

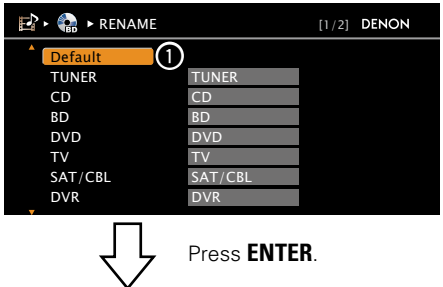

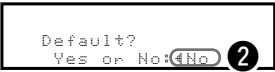


List



Examples of menu and front display

Below we describe typical examples of displays on the TV screen and on the set's display window.

| | Menu display | Front display | Description |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Top menu display |  |  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Press MENU to display the menu screen. 2 TV screen: Displays the selected line. Display: Displays the selected item. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use Δ/∇ to move to the item you want to set.  |
| Display when changing settings |   |   | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 TV screen: Displays the selected line. Display: Displays the selected item. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use Δ/∇ to move to the item you want to set. 2 Press ENTER to set to the mode in which the setting can be made. 3 \blacktriangleleft \blacktriangleright is displayed at the sides of items whose setting can be changed. Use \blacktriangleleft \blacktriangleright to change to the desired setting. |
| Display when resetting |   |   | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Press Δ to select "Default", then press ENTER. 2 Press \blacktriangleleft to select "Yes", then press ENTER. |

Inputting characters

You can change the names as desired using the “Preset Name” (page 93), “Rename” (page 91), “Rhapsody Account” (page 111), “Napster Account” (page 111), “Zone Rename” (page 114), “Quick Select Name” (page 114) and character input for the network functions.

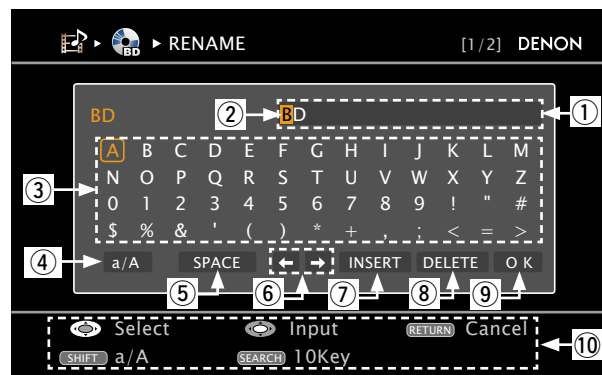
For inputting characters, there are three methods, as shown below.

Method for inputting characters

| Method | Operations |
|--|--|
| Using the keyboard screen | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Operating with the remote control unit. Select a character on the TV screen to input characters. |
| Using the number buttons (10 Key input screen) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Operating with the remote control unit. Multiple characters are assigned to a button, and each time the button is pressed, a character is switched. |
| Using the cursor buttons (10 Key input screen) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Operating with the remote control unit. Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ and ENTER to input characters. |

Keyboard screen

Display of a keyboard input screen



- ① Character input section (Maximum 8 characters)
- ② Cursor
- ③ Keyboard section
- ④ Uppercase and lowercase switch key
- ⑤ Space key
- ⑥ Cursor keys
- ⑦ Insert key
- ⑧ Delete key
- ⑨ OK key
- ⑩ Guide for operation buttons

Using the keyboard screen

1 Display the screen for inputting characters (page 82 “Menu map”).

2 Select a character to be changed.
 ① Press $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ to select **←** or **→**.

② Press **ENTER** to place the cursor at the character to be changed.
 Each time **ENTER** is pressed, the cursor moves by one character.

3 Select a character to be input with $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ then press **ENTER**.

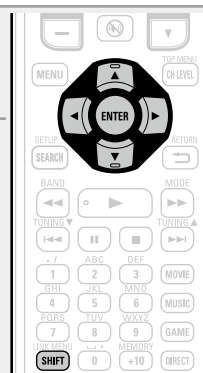
- The types of characters that can be input are as shown below.

[Upper case characters/Numbers/Symbols]
 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
 0123456789
 ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , ; < = >
[Lower case characters/Numbers/Symbols]
 abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
 0123456789
 . @ - _ / : ; ~ ? [\] ^ ` { | }

- When you press **SHIFT** while you type in, you can change uppercase characters to lowercase and vice versa.

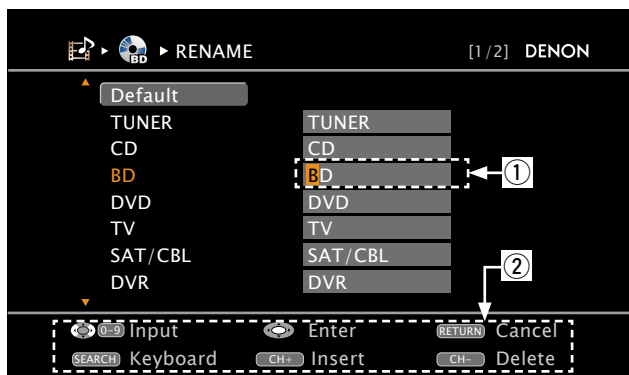
4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to change the name.

5 Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ to select **OK**, then press **ENTER**.



10 Key input screen

Display of a 10 Key input screen



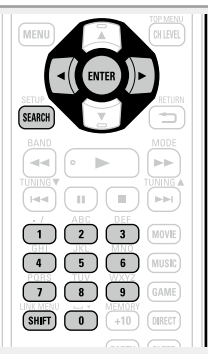
- ① Character input section (Maximum 8 characters)
- ② Guide for operation buttons

Using the number buttons

1 Display the screen for inputting characters (page 82 “Menu map”).

2 Press **SEARCH** while a keyboard screen is displayed. A 10 Key input screen is displayed.

- When a button from **0 – 9** is pressed while the soft keyboard screen is being displayed, the screen switches to the 10 Key input screen.



3 Place the cursor at the character to be changed with **<** **>** and press the number button (**0 – 9**) until the desired character is displayed.

- The types of characters that can be input are as shown below.

| | |
|------------------|--|
| 1 1. @ - _ / : ~ | 6 M N O m n o 6 |
| 2 A B C a b c 2 | 7 P Q R S p q r s 7 |
| 3 D E F d e f 3 | 8 T U V t u v 8 |
| 4 G H I g h i 4 | 9 W X Y Z w x y z 9 |
| 5 J K L j k l 5 | 0 0 (Space) ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , ; < = > ? [\] ^ _ { } ~ |

- When you press **SHIFT** while you type in, you can change uppercase characters to lowercase and vice versa.
- For entering the characters assigned to one number button continuously, press **>** to move the cursor to the right after entering a character then enter the next character.
- For entering characters assigned to separate buttons, press the number button continuously. The cursor automatically moves to the next position, and the entered character is registered.

4 Repeat step 3 to change the name then press **ENTER** to register it.

Example: For changing the input source from “DVD” to “DENON”

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| ① Place the cursor at “V”. | D V D |
| ② Press 3 twice. “V” changes to “E”. | D E D |
| ③ Press 6 twice. “E” is automatically registered, and “D” changes to “N”. | D E N |
| ④ Press > . “N” is registered. | D E N █ |
| ⑤ Press 6 three times. Input “O”. | D E N O |
| ⑥ Press > . “O” is registered. | D E N O █ |
| ⑦ Press 6 twice. Input “N”. | D E N O N |
| ⑧ Press ENTER to register the input source name. | |

Using the cursor buttons

1 Display the screen for inputting characters (page 82 “Menu map”).

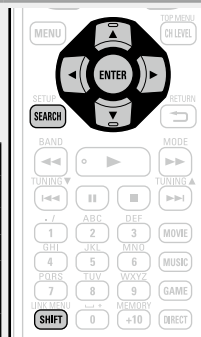
2 Press **SEARCH** while a keyboard screen is displayed. A 10 Key screen is displayed.

3 Use **<** **>** to set the cursor to the character you want to change.

4 Use **Δ** **∇** to change the character, then press **ENTER**.

- The types of characters that can be input are as shown below.

| |
|---|
| [Upper case characters] ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| [Lower case characters] abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz |
| [Symbols] ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ { } ~ |
| [Numbers] 0123456789 (Space) |



- When you press **SHIFT** while you type in, you can change uppercase characters to lowercase and vice versa.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to change the name then press **ENTER** to register it.



SOURCE SELECT



Perform settings related to input source playback.

- You do not have to change the settings to use the unit. Make settings when needed.

Menu operation

1 Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch the zone mode to **M** (MAIN ZONE).

The **M** indicator lights.

2 Press **AMP** to set the remote control unit to AMP-operation mode.

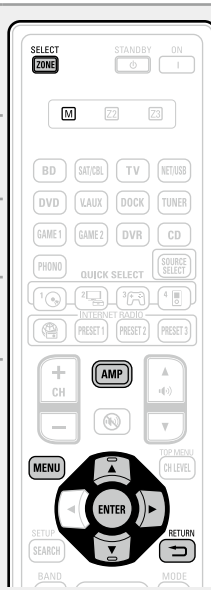
3 Press **MENU**.

The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

4 Use Δ / ∇ to select the menu to be set or operated.

5 Press **ENTER** or \triangleright to enter the setting.

- To return to the previous item, press **RETURN**.
- Exiting the Menu, press **MENU** while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.



Items that can be set with the "SOURCE SELECT" procedure

Input Assign (page 88)

Video (page 89)

Input Mode (Audio) (page 91)

Rename (page 91)

Source Level (Audio) (page 91)

Play (page 91)

Playback Mode (page 92)

Still Picture (page 92)

Auto Preset (page 92)

Preset Skip (page 93)

Preset Name (page 93)

Important information

About the display of input sources

In this section, the configurable input sources for each item are shown as follows.

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|----------|---------|---------|---------|----------|-------|------|---------|-----------|
| BD | DVD | TV | SAT/CBL | DVR | GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | DOCK | NET/USB | Favorites |
| Internet Radio | Media Server | USB/iPod | Flickr | Pandora | Napster | Rhapsody | TUNER | CD | | |

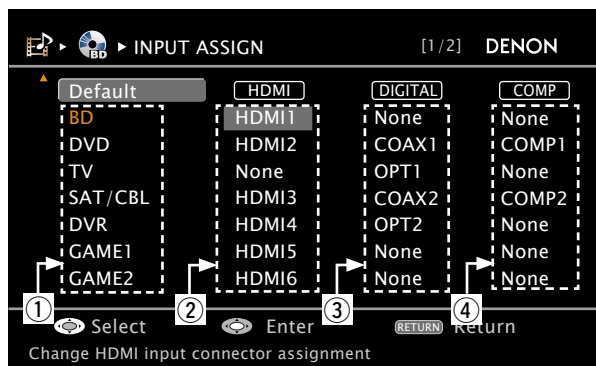
NOTE

Input sources that have been set to "Delete" at "Source Delete" (page 113) cannot be selected.

Input Assign

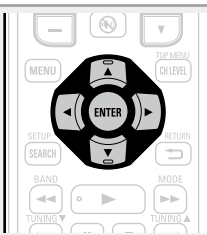
Examples of "Input Assign" menu screen displays

This screen appears when the "SOURCE SELECT" – "each input source" – "Input Assign" menu is selected. Use the "Input Assign" menu to change the ② HDMI input connectors, ③ Digital input connectors, and ④ component input connectors that are assigned to the ① input sources in default settings.



Input assignments menu operations

- 1** Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ to move the highlight to the item you want to set.
- 2** Press **ENTER**, then use $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to select the input connector to be assigned.
- 3** Press **ENTER** to register the setting.



Setting items

HDMI

Set this to change the HDMI input connectors assigned to the input sources.

| | | |
|---------|-------|-------|
| BD | DVD | TV |
| SAT/CBL | DVR | |
| GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX |
| DOCK | | |

Setting details

HDMI 1 / HDMI 2 / HDMI 3 / HDMI 4 / HDMI 5 / HDMI 6 / HDMI 7

None : Do not assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.

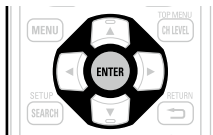
- At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below.

| Input source | BD | DVD | TV | SAT/CBL | DVR |
|-----------------|--------|--------|------|---------|--------|
| Default setting | HDMI 1 | HDMI 2 | None | HDMI 3 | HDMI 4 |

| Input source | GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | DOCK |
|-----------------|--------|--------|--------|------|
| Default setting | HDMI 5 | HDMI 6 | HDMI 7 | None |



- An input source to which an HDMI input connector cannot be assigned is displayed as "----".
- To play the video signal assigned at "HDMI" combined with the audio signal assigned at "Input Assign" – "Digital", select "Digital" at "Input Mode" ([page 91](#)).
- The audio signals input from the analog and digital connectors are not output to the monitor.
- When a control dock for iPod is connected, signals cannot be assigned to the HDMI connectors.
- When "HDMI Control" – "Control" ([page 106](#)) is set to "ON", HDMI input connector cannot be assigned to "TV".

| Setting items | Setting details | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--------|-------|---------|-------|--|-------|-------|-------|------|----|--|---|--------------|----|-----|----|---------|-----|-----------------|------|--------|-------|--------|-------|--------------|-------|-------|-------|------|-----------------|-----------------|------|------|------|------|------|
| DIGITAL Set this to change the digital input connectors assigned to the input sources. <table border="1" style="margin-top: 10px;"> <tr><td>BD</td><td>DVD</td><td>TV</td></tr> <tr><td>SAT/CBL</td><td>DVR</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>GAME1</td><td>GAME2</td><td>V.AUX</td></tr> <tr><td>DOCK</td><td>CD</td><td></td></tr> </table> | BD | DVD | TV | SAT/CBL | DVR | | GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | DOCK | CD | | COAX (coaxial) 1, 2 / OPT (optical) 1, 2 None : Do not assign a digital input connector to the selected input source. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below. <table border="1" style="margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Input source</th> <th>BD</th> <th>DVD</th> <th>TV</th> <th>SAT/CBL</th> <th>DVR</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Default setting</td> <td>None</td> <td>COAX 1</td> <td>OPT 1</td> <td>COAX 2</td> <td>OPT 2</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1" style="margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Input source</th> <th>GAME1</th> <th>GAME2</th> <th>V.AUX</th> <th>DOCK</th> <th>CD</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Default setting</td> <td>None</td> <td>None</td> <td>None</td> <td>None</td> <td>None</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Input source | BD | DVD | TV | SAT/CBL | DVR | Default setting | None | COAX 1 | OPT 1 | COAX 2 | OPT 2 | Input source | GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | DOCK | CD | Default setting | None | None | None | None | None |
| BD | DVD | TV | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SAT/CBL | DVR | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DOCK | CD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input source | BD | DVD | TV | SAT/CBL | DVR | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Default setting | None | COAX 1 | OPT 1 | COAX 2 | OPT 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input source | GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | DOCK | CD | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Default setting | None | None | None | None | None | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| COMP (Component video) Set this to change the component video input connectors assigned to the input sources. <table border="1" style="margin-top: 10px;"> <tr><td>BD</td><td>DVD</td><td>TV</td></tr> <tr><td>SAT/CBL</td><td>DVR</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>GAME1</td><td>GAME2</td><td>V.AUX</td></tr> <tr><td>DOCK</td><td></td><td></td></tr> </table> | BD | DVD | TV | SAT/CBL | DVR | | GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | DOCK | | | COMP (Component video) 1, 2 None : Do not assign a component video input connector to the selected input source. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below. <table border="1" style="margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Input source</th> <th>BD</th> <th>DVD</th> <th>TV</th> <th>SAT/CBL</th> <th>DVR</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Default setting</td> <td>None</td> <td>COMP 1</td> <td>None</td> <td>COMP 2</td> <td>None</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1" style="margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Input source</th> <th>GAME1</th> <th>GAME2</th> <th>V.AUX</th> <th>DOCK</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Default setting</td> <td>None</td> <td>None</td> <td>None</td> <td>None</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> An input source to which an component video input connector cannot be assigned is displayed as “---”. When a control dock for iPod is connected, signals cannot be assigned to the component video connectors. | Input source | BD | DVD | TV | SAT/CBL | DVR | Default setting | None | COMP 1 | None | COMP 2 | None | Input source | GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | DOCK | Default setting | None | None | None | None | | |
| BD | DVD | TV | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SAT/CBL | DVR | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DOCK | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input source | BD | DVD | TV | SAT/CBL | DVR | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Default setting | None | COMP 1 | None | COMP 2 | None | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input source | GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | DOCK | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Default setting | None | None | None | None | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Default The “Input Assign” settings are returned to the default settings. | Yes : Reset to the defaults. No : Do not reset to the defaults. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you select “Default” and press ENTER, the message “Return all settings to the default?” is displayed. Select “Yes” or “No”, and then press ENTER.  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |



Video




Default settings are underlined.

Set the source video.

* “BD”, “TV”, “GAME1” or “GAME2” can be set when “HDMI” ([page 88](#)) or “COMP” ([page 89](#)) has been assigned.

| Setting items | Setting details | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|-----|-------|----|---|---------|--|--|-----|--|-------|---|--|-------|---|-------|--|--|------|--|--|
| Video Select Video of another input source is played back combined with the playing audio. | SOURCE : Play the picture and sound of the input source. BD / DVD / TV / SAT/CBL / DVR / GAME1 / GAME2 / V.AUX / DOCK : Select video input source to view. This can be set for individual input sources. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “BD”, “TV”, “GAME1” and “GAME2” can be selected only when a component video is assigned as an input source. <p>NOTE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is not possible to select HDMI input signals. Input sources for which “Delete” is selected at “Source Delete” (page 113) cannot be selected. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Video Mode Make settings for video processing. <table border="1" style="margin-top: 10px;"> <tr><td>BD</td><td>*</td><td>DVD</td><td>TV</td><td>*</td></tr> <tr><td>SAT/CBL</td><td></td><td></td><td>DVR</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>GAME1</td><td>*</td><td></td><td>GAME2</td><td>*</td></tr> <tr><td>V.AUX</td><td></td><td></td><td>DOCK</td><td></td></tr> </table> | BD | * | DVD | TV | * | SAT/CBL | | | DVR | | GAME1 | * | | GAME2 | * | V.AUX | | | DOCK | | Auto : Process video automatically based on the HDMI content information. Game : Always process video appropriate for game content. Movie : Process video normally. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If “Video Mode” is set to “Auto”, the mode is switched according to the input contents. If a source is played in both MAIN ZONE (audio and video) and ZONE2 (audio only) modes in the same room, audio in MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 modes may sound out of synchronization, but this is not malfunction. In this case, setting to “Game” mode may improve audio synchronization. |
| BD | * | DVD | TV | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SAT/CBL | | | DVR | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GAME1 | * | | GAME2 | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| V.AUX | | | DOCK | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Setting items | Setting details | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------------|---------|-----|----|---|---------|--|-----|--|--|-------|---|-------|--|--|---|-------|------|---------|--|--|---|
| Video Convert The input video signal is converted automatically in conjunction with the connected TV (page 5 “Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)”). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>BD</td><td>*</td><td>DVD</td><td>TV</td><td>*</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">SAT/CBL</td><td colspan="3">DVR</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GAME1</td><td>*</td><td colspan="3">GAME2</td><td>*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>V.AUX</td><td colspan="4">DOCK</td> </tr> </table> | BD | * | DVD | TV | * | SAT/CBL | | DVR | | | GAME1 | * | GAME2 | | | * | V.AUX | DOCK | | | | ON : The input video signal is converted. OFF : The input video signal is not converted.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a non-standard video signal from a game machine or some other source is input, the video conversion function might not operate. In this case set “Video Convert” to “OFF”. When “Video Convert” is set to “OFF”, the video conversion function does not work. In this case, connect this unit and TV with the same type of cable. |
| BD | * | DVD | TV | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SAT/CBL | | DVR | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GAME1 | * | GAME2 | | | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| V.AUX | DOCK | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| i/p Scaler Convert the input source’s resolution to the resolution set at “Resolution”. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>BD</td><td>*</td><td>DVD</td><td>TV</td><td>*</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">SAT/CBL</td><td colspan="3">DVR</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GAME1</td><td>*</td><td colspan="3">GAME2</td><td>*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>V.AUX</td><td>DOCK</td><td colspan="3">NET/USB</td> </tr> </table> | BD | * | DVD | TV | * | SAT/CBL | | DVR | | | GAME1 | * | GAME2 | | | * | V.AUX | DOCK | NET/USB | | | Analog : Use i/p scaler function for analog video signal. Analog & HDMI : Use i/p scaler function for analog and HDMI video signal. HDMI : Use i/p scaler function for HDMI video signal. OFF : Do not use i/p scaler function.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Analog & HDMI” and “HDMI” can be set for input sources for which an HDMI input connector is assigned. Which items can be set depend on the input source assigned to each input connector. This function is not effective when the input signal is “x.v.Color”, 3D, sYCC 601 color, Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC 601 color or computer resolution. |
| BD | * | DVD | TV | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SAT/CBL | | DVR | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GAME1 | * | GAME2 | | | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| V.AUX | DOCK | NET/USB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |



| Setting items | Setting details | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------|---------|-----|----|---|---------|--|-----|--|--|-------|---|-------|--|--|---|-------|------|---------|--|--|---|
| Resolution Set the output resolution. You can set “Resolution” separately for HDMI output of the analog video input and HDMI input. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>BD</td><td>*</td><td>DVD</td><td>TV</td><td>*</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">SAT/CBL</td><td colspan="3">DVR</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GAME1</td><td>*</td><td colspan="3">GAME2</td><td>*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>V.AUX</td><td>DOCK</td><td colspan="3">NET/USB</td> </tr> </table> | BD | * | DVD | TV | * | SAT/CBL | | DVR | | | GAME1 | * | GAME2 | | | * | V.AUX | DOCK | NET/USB | | | Auto : The number of pixels the TV connected to the HDMI output connector supports is detected automatically and the appropriate output resolution is set. 480p/576p / 1080i / 720p / 1080p : Set the output resolution.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This item can be set when “i/p Scaler” is set to anything other than “OFF”. When “i/p Scaler” is set to “Analog & HDMI”, the resolution of both the analog video input signal and HDMI input signal can be set. |
| BD | * | DVD | TV | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SAT/CBL | | DVR | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GAME1 | * | GAME2 | | | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| V.AUX | DOCK | NET/USB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Progressive Mode Set an appropriate progressive conversion mode for the source video signal. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>BD</td><td>*</td><td>DVD</td><td>TV</td><td>*</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">SAT/CBL</td><td colspan="3">DVR</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GAME1</td><td>*</td><td colspan="3">GAME2</td><td>*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>V.AUX</td><td>DOCK</td><td colspan="3"></td> </tr> </table> | BD | * | DVD | TV | * | SAT/CBL | | DVR | | | GAME1 | * | GAME2 | | | * | V.AUX | DOCK | | | | Auto : The video signal is automatically detected and the appropriate mode is set. Video1 : Select mode suitable for video playback Video2 : Select mode suitable for video and 30-frame film material playback.  This item can be set when “i/p Scaler” is set to anything other than “OFF”. |
| BD | * | DVD | TV | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SAT/CBL | | DVR | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GAME1 | * | GAME2 | | | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| V.AUX | DOCK | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Aspect Set the aspect ratio for the video signals output to the HDMI. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>BD</td><td>*</td><td>DVD</td><td>TV</td><td>*</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">SAT/CBL</td><td colspan="3">DVR</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GAME1</td><td>*</td><td colspan="3">GAME2</td><td>*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>V.AUX</td><td>DOCK</td><td colspan="3">NET/USB</td> </tr> </table> | BD | * | DVD | TV | * | SAT/CBL | | DVR | | | GAME1 | * | GAME2 | | | * | V.AUX | DOCK | NET/USB | | | Full : Output at 16:9 aspect ratio. Normal : Output at 4:3 aspect ratio.  “Aspect” can be set when “i/p Scaler” is set to anything other than “OFF”. |
| BD | * | DVD | TV | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SAT/CBL | | DVR | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GAME1 | * | GAME2 | | | * | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| V.AUX | DOCK | NET/USB | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

* “BD”, “TV”, “GAME1” or “GAME2” can be set when “HDMI” (page 88) or “COMP” (page 89) has been assigned.

Input Mode (Audio)


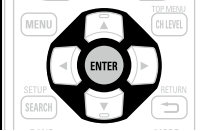
Default settings are underlined.

The input modes available for selection may vary depending on the input source.

| Setting items | Setting details | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|-------|----|---------|--|-----|-------|-------|-------|------|----|--|---|
| Input Mode Set the audio input modes for the different input sources. It is normally recommended to set the audio input mode to "Auto". | Auto : Automatically detect input signal and perform playback. HDMI : Play only signals from HDMI input. Digital : Play only signals from digital input. Analog : Play only signals from analog input.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "HDMI" can be set for input sources for which "HDMI" is assigned at "Input Assign" (page 88). • "Digital" can be set for input sources for which "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign" (page 89). • If the input source is set to "TV", "GAME1" or "GAME2", it cannot be set to "Analog". • When digital signals are properly input, the DIG indicator lights on the display. If the DIG indicator does not light, check the digital input connector assignment and the connections. • If "HDMI Control" – "Control" is set to "ON" and a TV compatible with the ARC is connected via the HDMI MONITOR connectors, the input mode whose input source is "TV" is fixed to ARC. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Decode Mode Set the audio decode mode for input source. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>BD</td> <td>DVD</td> <td>TV</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">SAT/CBL</td> <td>DVR</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GAME1</td> <td>GAME2</td> <td>V.AUX</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DOCK</td> <td>CD</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> | BD | DVD | TV | SAT/CBL | | DVR | GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | DOCK | CD | | Auto : Detect type of digital input signal and decode and play automatically. PCM : Decode and play only PCM input signals. DTS : Decode and play only DTS input signals.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This item can be set for input sources for which "HDMI" or "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign" (page 88). • Normally set this mode to "Auto". Set "PCM" and "DTS" when inputting the corresponding input signal. |
| BD | DVD | TV | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SAT/CBL | | DVR | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GAME1 | GAME2 | V.AUX | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DOCK | CD | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Rename

Change the display name of the selected input source.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|---|
| Rename Change the display name of the selected input source. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Up to eight characters can be input. • For character input, see page 85. |
| Default The input source name is returned to the default setting. | Yes : Reset to the defaults. No : Do not reset to the defaults.  If you select "Default" and press ENTER , the message "Return all settings to the default?" is displayed. Select "Yes" or "No", and then press ENTER .  |


Source Level (Audio)

Default settings are underlined.

- This function corrects the playback level of the selected input source's audio input.
- Make this setting if there are differences in the input volume levels between the different sources.

Setting details

-12dB – +12dB (0dB)

-  The analog input level and digital input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which "HDMI" or "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign" ([page 88](#)).

Play

Displays the playback screen of each input source.

| | | | | | | | | |
|----------|---------|-----------|----------------|--------------|----------|--------|---------|---------|
| DOCK | NET/USB | Favorites | Internet Radio | Media Server | USB/iPod | Flickr | Pandora | Napster |
| Rhapsody | TUNER | | | | | | | |

Playback Mode

Default settings are underlined.

Input source : "DOCK"

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|---|
| Repeat Make settings for repeat mode. DOCK | All : All files are played repeatedly. One : A file being played is played repeatedly. OFF : Repeat playback mode is canceled. |
| Shuffle Make settings for shuffle mode. DOCK | Songs : Shuffle songs. Albums : Shuffle albums. OFF : Shuffle playback mode is canceled. |

Input source : "NET/USB"

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|---|
| Repeat Make settings for repeat mode. Media Server USB/iPod Napster Rhapsody | All : All files are played repeatedly (All files in a Folder or an album are played repeatedly). One : A file being played is played repeatedly. OFF : Repeat playback mode is canceled. |
| Random Make random mode settings. Media Server USB/iPod Napster Rhapsody | ON : Enable random playback. OFF : Disable random playback. |

Still Picture


Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for playing back still picture images.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|--|
| Slide Show Make slide show settings. NET/USB | ON : Display still picture images in a slide show. OFF : The slide show is not played back. |
| Interval Set the time for displaying a single image when playing back images in the slide show. NET/USB | <u>5s</u> – 60s |

Auto Preset


Use the auto preset function to program radio stations.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|--|
| Start Start the auto preset process. TUNER |  If an FM station cannot be preset automatically, select the desired station by tuning it in manually, then preset it manually. |

Preset Skip


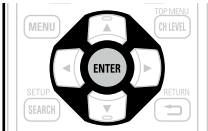
Default settings are underlined.

Set preset channel to be skipped when selecting.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|--|
| <p>A – G Set the preset channels you do not want to display. You can set by preset memory block (A to G) or by preset channel (1 to 8).</p> <p>TUNER</p> | <p>All : Skip all channels of the selected preset memory blocks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : All of the preset channels from 1 to 8 of the selected preset memory blocks are all set to “ON”. • Skip : All of the preset channels from 1 to 8 of the selected preset memory blocks are all set to “Skip”. <p>1 – 8 : Set by individual preset channels in the currently selected preset memory block.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : Display the selected preset channel. • Skip : Do not display the selected preset channel. <p> When preset channels 1 to 8 are set to “Skip”, blocks (A – G) can be skipped.</p> |

Preset Name

Assign name to a preset memory.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|---|
| <p>A1 – G8 Change the display name of the selected channel.</p> <p>TUNER</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Up to eight characters can be input. • For character input, see page 85. |
| <p>Default The changed preset name is returned to the default setting.</p> | <p>Yes : Reset to the defaults. No : Do not reset to the defaults.</p> <p> When you select “Default” and press ENTER, the “Return all settings to the default?” prompt is displayed. Select either “Yes” or “No”, and press ENTER.</p>  |



Sound field effects for surround sound and video quality can be adjusted.

Menu operation

1 Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch the zone mode to **[M]** (MAIN ZONE).

The **[M]** indicator lights.

2 Press **AMP** to set the remote control unit to AMP-operation mode.

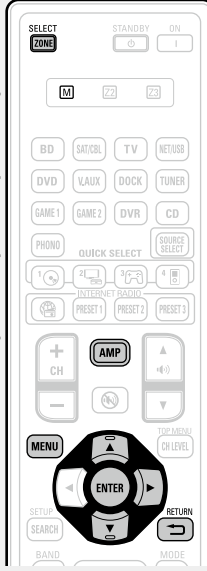
3 Press **MENU**.

The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

4 Use Δ / ∇ to select the menu to be set or operated.

5 Press **ENTER** or \triangleright to enter the setting.

- To return to the previous item, press **RETURN** \curvearrowright .
- Exiting the Menu, press **MENU** while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.



Items that can be set with the "AUDIO/VIDEO ADJUST" procedure

Audio Adjust ([page 95](#))

- Surround Parameters** ([page 95](#))
- Tone** ([page 97](#))
- Audyssey Settings** ([page 98](#))
- Manual EQ** ([page 99](#))
- RESTORER** ([page 99](#))
- Audio Delay** ([page 99](#))

Picture Adjust ([page 100](#))



Audio Adjust

Surround Parameters

Default settings are underlined.


The items (parameters) that can be adjusted depend on the signal being input and the currently set surround mode. For details on the adjustable parameters, see “Surround modes and surround parameters” ([page 131](#)).


NOTE


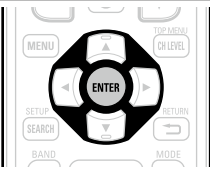
- Some setting items cannot be set while playback is stopped. Make the settings during playback.
- You cannot set the surround parameters in the PURE DIRECT mode.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|--|
| Mode Set the play modes for the different surround modes. | <input type="checkbox"/> In the PLIIx or PLII mode Cinema : Surround sound mode optimized for movie sources. Music : Surround sound mode optimized for music sources. Game : Surround sound mode optimized for games. Pro Logic : Dolby Pro Logic playback mode (PLII mode only). |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> In the PLIIz mode Height : Dolby PLIIz Height playback mode. |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> In the DTS NEO:6 mode Cinema : Surround sound mode optimized for movie sources. Music : Surround sound mode optimized for music sources. |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When “Surround Parameters” – “PLIIz Height” (page 96) is set to “ON”, the “Height” mode is set automatically. • The “Music” mode is also effective for movie sources including a lot of stereo music. |
| Cinema EQ Soften the treble range of movie soundtracks for better understanding. | ON : “Cinema EQ” is used. OFF : “Cinema EQ” is not used. |
| DRC Compress dynamic range (difference between loud and soft sounds). | Auto : Automatic dynamic range compression on/off control according to source. This can be set in the Dolby TrueHD mode. Low / Middle / High : These set the compression level. OFF : Dynamic range compression always off. |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|--|
| D.COMP Compress dynamic range (difference between loud and soft sounds). | OFF : Turn dynamic range compression off. Low / Middle / High : These set the compression level. |
| LFE Adjust the low-frequency effects level (LFE). | -10dB – 0dB For proper playback of the different sources, we recommend setting to the values below. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dolby Digital sources : “0dB” • DTS movie sources : “0dB” • DTS music sources : “-10dB” |
| Center Image Assign center channel signal to front left and right channels for wider sound. | 0.0 – 1.0 (0.3) |
| Panorama Assign front L/R signal also to surround channels for wider sound. | ON : Set. OFF : Do not set. |
| Dimension Shift sound image center to front or rear to adjust playback balance. | 0 – 6 (3) |
| Center Width Assign center channel signal to front left and right channels for wider sound. | 0 – 7 (3) |
| Delay Time Adjust delay time to control sound stage size. | 0ms – 300ms (30ms) |
| Effect Level Adjust effect signal level. | 1 – 15 (10) Set to a lower level if the positioning and sense of phase of the surround signals seems unnatural. |
| Room Size Determine size of acoustic environment. | Small : Simulate acoustics of a small room. Medium small : Simulate acoustics of a medium-small room. Medium : Simulate acoustics of a medium room. Medium large : Simulate acoustics of a medium-large room. Large : Simulate acoustics of a large room. |
| | NOTE “Room Size” does not indicate the size of the room in which sources are played. |




| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|--|
| Height Gain Control the front height channel volume. | <p>Low : Reduce the front height channel volume. Middle : Front height channel sound is output with standard sound volume. High : Increase the front height channel volume.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <p>“Height Gain” is displayed for the following settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the “Speaker Config.” – “Front Height” setting (page 103) is set other than to “None”. • When surround mode is “PLIIz” or the PLIIz decoder is used. |
| PLIIz Height Determine whether to use front height channel. | <p>ON : Audio is output from the front height speaker. OFF : Audio is not output from the front height speaker.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “PLIIz Height” is displayed with the settings listed below. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the “Speaker Config.” – “Front Height” setting (page 103) is set to other than “None”. • “PLIIz Height” cannot be set if the HD Audio source being played includes a front height channel. In this case, the Front height channel is played back without decoding in PLIIz mode, using the input signal. |
| AFDM (Auto flag detect mode) Detect the source’s surround back channel signal and set the optimum surround mode automatically. | <p>ON : Set. OFF : Do not set.</p> <p>[Example] Playing Dolby Digital software (with EX flag)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When “AFDM” is set to “ON”, the surround mode is automatically set to the DOLBY D + PLIIx C mode. • To play in the DOLBY DIGITAL EX mode, set “AFDM” to “OFF” and “Surround Parameters” – “Surround Back” to “MTRX ON”. <p> Some Dolby Digital EX sources do not include EX flags. If the playback mode does not switch automatically even when “AFDM” is set to “ON”, set “Surround Parameters” – “Surround Back” to “MTRX ON” or “PLIIx CINEMA”.</p> |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|---|
| Surround Back Sets the method of generating of the surround back channel. | <p><input type="checkbox"/> For 2-channel sources ON : The surround back channel is used. OFF : No signal is played from the surround back channels.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> For multi-channel sources Set the decoding method for the surround back channel. ON*1 : Convert the 5.1-channel source of the DTS/DTS-HD input signals to the 7.1-channel output recommended by DTS and then play. MTRX ON : Generate and play the surround back channel signals from the surround channel signals by means of the Dolby Digital EX decoder. ES MTRX*2 : Generate and play the surround back channel signals from the surround channel signals of the DTS source by means of the DTS-ES decoder. PLIIx CINEMA*3 : Generate and play the surround back signals by decoding the signals in the Dolby Pro Logic IIx Cinema mode. PLIIx MUSIC : Generate and play the surround back signals by decoding the signals in the Dolby Pro Logic IIx Music mode. OFF : Do not play the surround back channel.</p> <p>*1 This can be selected when playing the 5.1-channel source of DTS/DTS-HD. *2 This can be selected when playing DTS sources. *3 This can be selected when “Speaker Config.” – “Surr.Back” (page 103) is set to “2spkr”.</p> <p> If the source being played contains a surround back signal, the decoder type is automatically selected by the AFDM function. Set “AFDM” to “OFF” to switch to your preferred decoder.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <p>If the setting in “Speaker Config.” – “Surr.Back” (page 103) is “None”, “Surround Back” is not displayed.</p> |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|---|
| Subwoofer Turn subwoofer output on and off. | ON : The subwoofer is used. OFF : The subwoofer is not used. <div style="background-color: #e91e63; color: white; padding: 2px; border-radius: 5px; display: inline-block; margin-top: 5px;">NOTE</div> This can be set when the surround mode is "DIRECT" (page 52) and the "Subwoofer Mode" (page 103) is "LFE+Main". |
| Default The "Surround Parameters" settings are returned to the default settings. | Yes : Reset to the defaults. No : Do not reset to the defaults. <div style="margin-top: 5px;">  When you select "Default" and press ENTER, the "Return all settings to the default?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press ENTER. </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;">  </div> |

Tone

Adjust the tonal quality of the sound.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|--|
| Tone Control Set the tone control function to ON and OFF. | ON : Allow tone adjustment (bass, treble). OFF : Playback without tone adjustment. <div style="margin-top: 5px;">  "Tone Control" can be set when "Dynamic EQ[®]" (page 98) is set to "OFF". </div> <div style="background-color: #e91e63; color: white; padding: 2px; border-radius: 5px; display: inline-block; margin-top: 5px;">NOTE</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Tone Control" settings are not reflected to ZONE2. The tone cannot be adjusted in the "DIRECT" mode. |
| Bass Adjust low frequency range (bass). | -6dB – +6dB <div style="margin-top: 5px;">  "Bass" can be set when "Tone Control" is set to "ON". </div> |
| Treble Adjust high frequency range (treble). | -6dB – +6dB <div style="margin-top: 5px;">  "Treble" can be set when "Tone Control" is set to "ON". </div> |




□ Audyssey Settings

Default settings are underlined.

Set Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume®. These can be selected after Audyssey® Auto Setup has been performed. For additional information on Audyssey technology, please see [page 137](#).







NOTE

- If you have not performed Auto Setup, or if you change the speaker settings after performing Auto Setup, you may not be able to select Dynamic EQ®/Dynamic Volume®. In this case, either perform Audyssey® Auto Setup over again or perform “Restore” ([page 25](#)) to return to the settings after Audyssey® Auto Setup was run.
- When HD Audio for which the sampling frequency exceeds 96 kHz is played back, the “Audyssey Settings” cannot be set.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|---|
| <p>MultEQ® XT MultEQ® XT corrects both time and frequency response problems in the listening area based on Audyssey® Auto Setup calibration. We recommend “Audyssey”.</p> <p>MultEQ® XT is the prerequisite function for Dynamic EQ® and Dynamic Volume®.</p> | <p>Audyssey : Optimize the frequency response of all speakers. Audyssey Byp.L/R : Optimize frequency response of speakers except front L and R speakers. Audyssey Flat : Optimize frequency response of all speakers to flat response. Manual : Apply frequency response set with “Manual EQ” (page 99). OFF : Turn “MultEQ® XT” equalizer off.</p> <p> • “Audyssey”, “Audyssey Byp. L/R” and “Audyssey Flat” can be selected after Audyssey® Auto Setup has been performed. “Audyssey” is automatically selected after performing Audyssey® Auto Setup. When “Audyssey”, “Audyssey Byp. L/R” or “Audyssey Flat” is selected,  illuminates.</p> <p>• After running Audyssey® Auto Setup, if the Speaker Configuration, Distance, Channel Level, and Crossover Frequency have changed without increasing the number of speakers measured, only  illuminates.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <p>• “MultEQ® XT” and “Manual” cannot be selected when “EQ Customize” is set to “Not Used” (page 107).</p> <p>• When using headphones, “MultEQ® XT” is automatically set to “OFF”.</p> |





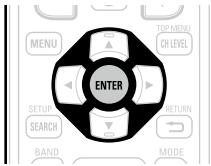
“MultEQ® XT”, “Dynamic EQ®” and “Dynamic Volume®” settings are stored for each input source.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|---|
| <p>Dynamic EQ® Solve the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics. Works with MultEQ® XT.</p> | <p>ON : Use Dynamic EQ®. OFF : Do not use Dynamic EQ®.</p> <p>  or  is displayed when set to “ON”.</p> |
| <p>Reference Level Offset Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is referenced to the standard film mix level. It makes adjustments to maintain the reference response and surround envelopment when the volume is turned down from 0 dB. However, film reference level is not always used in music or other non-film content. Dynamic EQ® Reference Level Offset provides three offsets from the film level reference (5 dB, 10 dB, and 15 dB) that can be selected when the mix level of the content is not within the standard.</p> | <p>0dB (Film Ref) : This is the default setting and should be used when listening to movies. 5dB : Select this setting for content that has a very wide dynamic range, such as classical music. 10dB : Select this setting for jazz or other music that has a wider dynamic range. This setting should also be selected for TV content as that is usually mixed at 10 dB below film reference. 15dB : Select this setting for pop/rock music or other program material that is mixed at very high listening levels and has a compressed dynamic range.</p> <p> Setting is enabled when “Dynamic EQ®” is “ON” (page 98).</p> |
| <p>Dynamic Volume® Solve the problem of large variations in volume level between TV, movies and other content (between quiet passages and loud passages, etc.) by automatically adjusting to the user’s preferred volume setting.</p> | <p>Midnight : Most adjustment to loudest and softest sounds. Evening : Medium adjustment to loudest and softest sound. Day : Least adjustment to loudest and softest sounds. OFF : Do not use “Dynamic Volume®”.</p> <p>  is displayed when set to “Midnight”, “Evening” or “Day”.</p> <p>• If “Dynamic Volume®” is set to “Yes” in Auto Setup (page 23), the setting is automatically changed to “Evening”.</p> |

Manual EQ

Default settings are underlined.

Use the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.
 "Manual EQ" can be set when "MultEQ[®] XT" setting ([page 98](#)) is "Manual".

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|--|
| Curve Copy Copy "Audyssey Flat" curve from MultEQ [®] XT. | Yes : Copy. No : Do not copy.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Curve Copy" is displayed after Audyssey[®] Auto Setup has been performed. When you select "Curve Copy" and press ENTER, the "Set EQ curve to Audyssey Flat?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press ENTER. |
| Default The "Manual EQ" settings are returned to the default settings. | Yes : Reset to the defaults. No : Do not reset to the defaults.  When you select "Default" and press ENTER , the "Return all settings to the default?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press ENTER .  |
| Adjust Channel Correct the tone of each speaker. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select the speaker tone adjustment method. All : Adjust the tone of all speakers together. L/R : Adjust the tone of left and right speakers together. Each : Adjust the tone of each speaker. Select the speaker. Select the adjustment frequency band. 63Hz / 125Hz / 250Hz / 500Hz / 1kHz / 2kHz / 4kHz / 8kHz / 16kHz <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the speakers you want to adjust when "L/R" or "Each" is selected. Adjust the level. -20.0dB – +6.0dB (0.0dB) |

RESTORER

Compressed audio formats such as MP3, WMA (Windows Media Audio) and MPEG-4 AAC reduce the amount of data by eliminating signal components that are hard for the human ear to hear. The RESTORER function generates the signals eliminated upon compression, restoring the sound to conditions near those of the original sound before compression. It also corrects the sense of volume of the bass to obtain richer sound with compressed audio signals.

Setting details

OFF : Do not use RESTORER.

Mode1 (RESTORER 64) : Optimized mode for compressed sources with very weak highs.

Mode2 (RESTORER 96) : Apply suitable bass and treble boost for all compressed sources.

Mode3 (RESTORER HQ) : Optimized mode for compressed sources with normal highs.



- This item can be set with analog signals or PCM signal (fs = 44.1/48 kHz) is input.

- "RESTORER" settings are stored for each input source.

- This item default setting for "iPod" and "NET/USB" is "Mode3". All others are set to "OFF".

- When set to something other than "OFF", **RSTR** is displayed.

- This cannot be set when the surround mode is set to "DIRECT" or "PURE DIRECT".

Audio Delay

Default settings are underlined.

While viewing video, manually adjust the time to delay audio output.

Setting details

0ms – 200ms



- This item can be set within the range of 0 to 100 ms when "Auto Lip Sync" is set to "ON" and when a TV compatible with Auto Lip Sync is connected.

- Store "Audio Delay" for each input source.

- Audio Delay for game mode can be set when "Video Mode" ([page 89](#)) is set to "Auto" or "Game".



Picture Adjust

Default settings are underlined.

Picture quality can be adjusted.

- This item can be set when the input source is **BD** **DVD** **TV** **SAT/CBL** **DVR** **GAME1** **GAME2** **V.AUX** **DOCK** **NET/USB**.
- With input sources other than the ones above, this item can be set when "Video Select" is selected. In this case, the original input source settings are called out.
- Can be set when the "Video Convert" setting ([page 90](#)) is "ON".
- "BD", "TV", "GAME1" or "GAME2" can be set when "HDMI" ([page 88](#)) or "COMP" ([page 89](#)) has been assigned.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|----------------------|
| Contrast Adjust picture contrast. | -6 - +6 (<u>0</u>) |
| Brightness Adjust picture brightness. | <u>0</u> - +12 |
| Chroma Level Adjust picture chroma level (saturation). | -6 - +6 (<u>0</u>) |
| Hue Adjust color hue. | -6 - +6 (<u>0</u>) |



The value set at "Picture Adjust" is stored in the memory individually for each input source.



SYSTEM SETUP

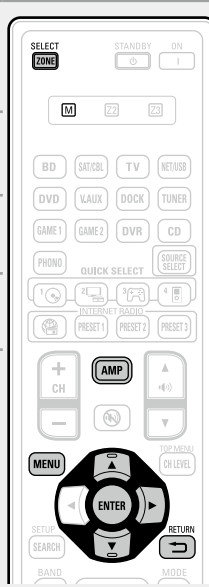


Set when changing Audyssey® Auto Setup settings, or when changing the audio, video, display or other settings.

- If you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey® Auto Setup, it will not be possible to set Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® (page 98).
- Can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.

Menu operation

- 1 Press ZONE SELECT** to switch the zone mode to **M** (MAIN ZONE).
The **M** indicator lights.
 - 2 Press AMP** to set the remote control unit to AMP-operation mode.
 - 3 Press MENU.**
The menu is displayed on the TV screen.
 - 4 Press Δ / ∇** to select the menu to be set or operated.
 - 5 Press ENTER** or **▷** to enter the setting.
- To return to the previous item, press **RETURN** \leftarrow .
 - Exiting the Menu, press **MENU** while the menu is displayed.
The menu display disappears.



Items that can be set with the "SYSTEM SETUP" procedure

Speaker Setup (page 102)

HDMI Setup (page 106)

Audio Setup (page 107)

Network Setup (page 108)

ZONE2 Setup (page 112)

Option Setup (page 113)

Language (page 116)



Speaker Setup


Default settings are underlined.


Perform when setting the speakers manually or when changing settings made in Audyssey® Auto Setup.


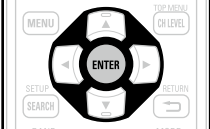

- If you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey® Auto Setup, it will not be possible to select Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® (page 98).
- "SYSTEM SETUP" can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.



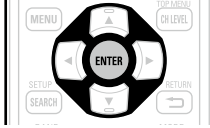
| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|---|
| <p>Amp Assign The signal output from the SURR.BACK/AMP ASSIGN speaker terminal of this unit can be switched to match your speaker environment.</p> | <p>NORMAL : Select the "NORMAL" setting to perform 7.2-channel playback using the surround back or front height speakers. ZONE2 : Select the "ZONE2" setting to assign the unit's built-in power amplifier for ZONE2 and output the audio in stereo. Bi-AMP : Select the "Bi-AMP" setting to connect the front speakers via the bi-amp connection. 2CH : When you perform 2-channel playback in the DIRECT or STEREO mode, select the "2CH" setting to use the other front speakers for playback. Front B : Select the "Front B" setting to use the second set of front speakers for playback. You can switch the front speakers A and B to be used for playback in accordance with the 2-channel playback or multi-channel playback mode. When you select this Front B setting, also perform the "Front Speaker Setup" (page 105) procedure. F.Height : Select the "F.Height" setting to use the front height speaker for playback.</p> |


| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|---|
| <p>Speaker Config. Select speaker configuration and size (bass reproduction capability).</p> <p>NOTE Do not use the outward shape of the speaker to determine selection of a "Large" or "Small" speaker. Instead, use the frequencies set in "Crossover Freq." (page 105) as the standard for determining bass reproduction capability.</p> | <p>Front : Set the front speaker size.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • Small : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. <p> When "Subwoofer" is set to "No", "Front" is automatically set to "Large".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When "Front" is set to "Small", "Center", "Surround", "Surr.Back" and "Front Height" can not be set to "Large". <p>Center : Set the presence and size of the center speaker.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • Small : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. • None : Select when a center speaker is not connected. <p> "Large" is not displayed when "Front" is set to "Small".</p> <p>Subwoofer : Set the presence of a subwoofer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes : Use a subwoofer. • No : Select when a subwoofer is not connected. <p> When "Front" is set to "Small", "Subwoofer" is automatically set to "Yes".</p> <p>Surround : Set the presence and size of the surround speakers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • Small : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. • None : Select when the surround speakers are not connected. <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When "Surround" is set to "Large", "Surr.Back" and "Front Height" can be set to "Large". • When "Surround" is set to "None", "Surr.Back" and "Front Height" are automatically set to "None". |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Speaker Config. (Continued) | <p>Surr.Back : Set the presence, size and number of surround back speakers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • Small : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. • None : Select when the surround back speakers are not connected. <p>• 2spkr : Use two surround back speakers.</p> <p>• 1spkr : Use only one surround back speaker. When you select this setting, connect the surround back speaker to the left (L) channel.</p> <p> Even when the "Surr.Back" setting is other than "None", sound may not be emitted from the surround back speaker, depending on the playback source. In this case, make "Surround Parameters" – "Surround Back" setting other than "OFF" (page 96).</p> <p>NOTE</p> <p>When "Amp Assign" setting (page 102) is "NORMAL", you can make the "Surr.Back" setting.</p> <p>Front Height : Set the presence and size of the front height speakers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • Small : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. • None : Select when the front height speakers are not connected. <p>NOTE</p> <p>When "Amp Assign" setting (page 102) is "F.Height", you can make the "Front Height" setting.</p> |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|--|
| Bass Setting Set subwoofer and LFE signal range playback. | <p>Subwoofer Mode : Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LFE : The low range signal of the channel set to "Small" speaker size is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer. • LFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer. <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Subwoofer Mode" can be set when "Speaker Config." – "Subwoofer" (page 102) is set to "Yes". • Play music or a movie source and select the mode offering the strongest bass. • Select "LFE+Main" if you want the bass signals to always be produced from the subwoofer. <p>NOTE</p> <p>If "Front" and "Center" for "Speaker Config." are set to "Large", and "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE", no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected surround mode.</p> <p>LPF for LFE : Set LFE signal playback range. Set this when you want to change the playback frequency of the subwoofer.</p> <p>• 80Hz / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz / 150Hz / 200Hz / 250Hz</p> |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|--|
| <p>Distance</p> <p>Set distance from listening position to speakers. Measure beforehand the distance from the listening position to each speaker.</p> | <p>Unit : Set the unit of distance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Feet / Meters <p>Step : Set the minimum variable width of the distance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1ft / 0.1ft • 0.1m / 0.01m <p>Default : The "Distance" settings are returned to the default settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes : Reset to the defaults. • No : Do not reset to the defaults. <p> When you select "Default" and press ENTER, the "Return all settings to the default?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press ENTER.</p>  |
| | <p>Front L / Front R / Center / Subwoofer / Surround L / Surround R / Surr.Back L* / Surr.Back R* / F.Height L / F.Height R : Select the speaker.</p> <p>* When the "Speaker Config." – "Surr.Back" setting (page 103) is set to "1spkr", "Surr.Back" is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0.0ft – 60.0ft / 0.00m – 18.00m : Set the distance. <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The speakers that can be selected differ depending on the "Amp Assign" (page 102) and "Speaker Config." (page 102) settings. • Default settings : Front L / Front R / Center / Subwoofer / F.Height L / F.Height R : 12.0 ft (3.60 m) Surround L / Surround R / Surr.Back L / Surr.Back R : 10.0 ft (3.00 m) • Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20.0 ft (6.00 m). <p>NOTE</p> <p>Speakers set to "None" in "Speaker Config." (page 102) are not displayed.</p> |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|--|
| <p>Channel Level</p> <p>Set the volume of the test tone to be the same when it is output from each speaker.</p> | <p>Test Tone Start : Output test tone.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Front L / F.Height L / Center / F.Height R / Front R / Surround R / Surr.Back R* / Surr.Back L* / Surround L / Subwoofer : Select the speaker. * When the "Speaker Config." – "Surr.Back" setting (page 103) is set to "1spkr", "Surr.Back" is displayed. • -12.0dB – +12.0dB (0.0dB) : Adjust the volume. <p></p> <p>When "Channel Level" is adjusted, the adjusted values are set for all the surround modes. To adjust the channel level separately for the different surround modes, use the operation see page 70.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Speakers set to "None" in the "Speaker Config." (page 102) settings are not displayed. • When a headphones jack is inserted in the PHONES jack of this unit, the "Channel Level" is not displayed. <p>Default : The "Channel Level" settings are returned to the default settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes : Reset to the defaults. • No : Do not reset to the defaults. <p> When you select "Default" and press ENTER, the "Return all settings to the default?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press ENTER.</p>  |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|---|
| <p>Crossover Freq. Set the maximum frequency of the bass signal output from each channel to the subwoofer. Set the Crossover Frequency to suit the bass reproduction capability of the speaker being used.</p> | <p>40Hz / 60Hz / 80Hz / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz / 150Hz / 200Hz / 250Hz : Set the crossover frequency.</p> <p>Advanced : Specify crossover frequency for each speaker.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Front / Center / Surround / Surr.Back / Front Height : Select the speaker. • 40Hz / 60Hz / 80Hz / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz / 150Hz / 200Hz / 250Hz : Set the crossover frequency. <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Crossover Freq.” can be set when the “Bass Setting” – “Subwoofer Mode” (page 103) setting is “LFE+Main”, or when you have a speaker that is set to “Small”. • Always set the crossover frequency to “80Hz”. When using small speakers, however, we recommend setting the crossover frequency to a higher frequency. • For speakers set to “Small”, sound below the crossover frequency is cut from the sound output. The cut bass sound is output from the subwoofer or front speakers. • The speakers that can be set when “Advanced” is selected differ depending on to the “Subwoofer Mode” setting (page 103). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When “LFE” is selected, speakers set to “Small” at “Speaker Config.” can be set. If the speakers are set to “Large”, “Full Band” is displayed and the setting cannot be made. • If set to “LFE+Main”, this setting can be made regardless of the speaker size. |
| <p>Front Speaker Setup Set the front speakers to use for every surround mode.</p> <p>NOTE This can be set when “Amp Assign” is set to “Front B” (page 102).</p> | <p>2CH DIRECT/STEREO : The front speakers used in the direct, stereo and pure direct play modes (2 channel) are set in advance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A : Front speaker A is used. • B : Front speaker B is used. • A+B : Both front speakers A and B are used. <p>MULTI CH : The front speakers used in modes other than the direct, stereo and pure direct play modes (2 channel) are set in advance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A : Front speaker A is used. • B : Front speaker B is used. • A+B : Both front speakers A and B are used. |



HDMI Setup

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for HDMI video/audio output.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|--|
| Auto Lip Sync Make automatic compensation for timing shift in audio and video output. | ON : Compensated. OFF : Not compensated. |
| HDMI Audio Out Select HDMI audio output device. | Amp : Play back through speakers connected to the unit. TV : Play back through TV connected to the unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The audio signal input from the HDMI input connector can be output as an output signal from the HDMI output connector by setting the HDMI audio output destination to TV. Audio signals input via the Analog/Coaxial/Optical input connectors cannot be output from the HDMI output connector. When the HDMI control function is activated, priority is given to the TV audio setting (page 68 "HDMI control function"). |
| HDMI Control You can link operations with devices connected to HDMI and compatible with HDMI Control. | Control : Set the HDMI control function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ON : Use HDMI control function. OFF : Do not use HDMI control function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a device that is not compatible with the HDMI control function is connected, set "HDMI Control" – "Control" to "OFF". Please consult the operating instructions for each connected device to check the settings. Refer to "HDMI control function" (page 68) for more information about the HDMI control function. |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|------------------------------------|---|
| HDMI Control (Continued) | <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p>NOTE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When "HDMI Control" – "Control" is set to "ON", it consumes more standby power. If you are not using this unit for an extended period, it is recommended that you unplug the power cord from the power outlet. "HDMI Control" does not work when the power to the device is off. Either turn power on or set to standby. The HDMI control function controls operations of a TV that is compatible with the HDMI control function. Make sure that the TV and HDMI are connected when you perform HDMI control. If the "HDMI Control" – "Control" settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change. </div> <hr/> <p>Standby Source : Sets the HDMI input source to put into standby when the power is on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Last : This item is set at the last-used input source. HDMI1 / HDMI2 / HDMI3 / HDMI4 / HDMI5 / HDMI6 / HDMI7 : Put the respective input source into standby. "Standby Source" can be set when "HDMI Control" – "Control" is set to "ON". |
| | <p>Power Off Control : Links the power standby of this unit to external devices.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All : If power to a connected TV is turned off independently of the input source, power to this unit is automatically set to standby. Video : If power to a connected TV is turned off when the input source is BD / DVD / TV / SAT/CBL / DVR / GAME1 / GAME2 / V.AUX / DOCK, power to this unit is automatically set to standby. OFF : This unit does not link with power to a TV. "Power Off Control" can be set when "HDMI Control" – "Control" is set to "ON". |



Audio Setup

Default settings are underlined.

Make settings for audio playback.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|---|
| <p>2ch Direct/Stereo Select the method for setting the speakers used in the 2-channel direct and stereo playback modes.</p> | <p>Setting : Select the method for setting the speakers used in the 2-channel direct and stereo playback modes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic : The settings at "Speaker Setup" (page 102) are applied. • Custom : Make separate settings for 2-channel. Make the following settings: <p>Front : Set the front speaker size.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies. • Small : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies. <p> If "Speaker Config." – "Subwoofer" (page 102) is set to "No", the setting is automatically set to "Large".</p> <p>Subwoofer : Set the presence of a subwoofer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes : Use a subwoofer. • No : Select when a subwoofer is not connected. <p> If "Speaker Config." – "Subwoofer" (page 102) is set to "No", the setting is automatically set to "No". If the "Front" setting is "Small", the setting is automatically "Yes".</p> <p>SW Mode : Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LFE : When the "2ch Direct/Stereo" – "Front" setting is set to "Large", the LFE signal alone is output from the subwoofer. Also, when the "2ch Direct/Stereo" – "Front" setting is set to "Small", the front channel low range signal is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer. • LFE+Main : The front channel low range signal is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer. <p> This setting can be set made "2ch Direct/Stereo" – "Subwoofer" is set to "Yes".</p> <p>Crossover : Set the maximum frequency of the bass signal output from each channel to the subwoofer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 40Hz / 60Hz / <u>80Hz</u> / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz / 150Hz / 200Hz / 250Hz <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This setting can be set made "2ch Direct/Stereo" – "Subwoofer" is set to "Yes". • If the "2ch Direct/Stereo" – "Front" setting is "Large" and the "SW Mode" setting is "LFE", "Full Band" is displayed and the setting cannot be made. |

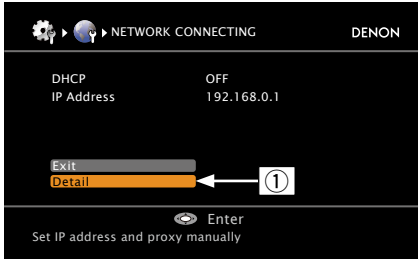
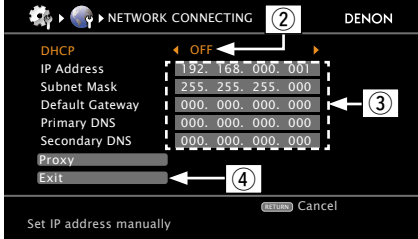

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|---|
| <p>2ch Direct/Stereo (Continued)</p> | <p>Distance FL / Distance FR : Select the speaker.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0.0ft – 60.0ft (<u>12.0ft</u>) / 0.00m – 18.00m (<u>3.60m</u>) : Set the distance to the speaker. <p> Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20.0 ft (6.00 m).</p> <p>Level FL / Level FR : Select the speaker.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • -12.0dB – +12.0dB (<u>0.0dB</u>) : Adjust the level of each channel. |
| <p>Auto Surround Mode Make setting for memorizing surround mode setting for each input signal type.</p> | <p>ON : Memorize settings. Automatically play with the last used surround mode.</p> <p>OFF : Do not memorize settings. Surround mode does not change according to input signal.</p> <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The auto surround mode function lets you store in the memory the surround mode last used for playing the four types of input signals listed below. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> ① Analog and PCM 2-channel signals ② Dolby Digital and DTS 2-channel signals ③ Dolby Digital and DTS multi-channel signals ④ LPCM Multi-channel signals • When playing in PURE DIRECT, the surround mode does not change even if the input signal is changed. |
| <p>EQ Customize Set the disengaged equalizers to not display when MultEQ[®] XT is selected.</p> <p></p> <p>The equalizer mode in which "Not Used" is selected cannot be stored and recalled in the Quick Select function.</p> | <p>Audyssey Byp. L/R : Set when not using "Audyssey Byp. L/R" equalizer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Used : Use. • Not Used : Do not use. <p> Set so that "Audyssey Byp. L/R" settings can be made when Audyssey[®] Auto Setup is performed.</p> <p>Audyssey Flat : Set when not using "Audyssey Flat" equalizer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Used : Use. • Not Used : Do not use. <p> Set so that "Audyssey Flat" settings can be made when Audyssey[®] Auto Setup is performed.</p> <p>Manual : Set when not using the "Manual" equalizer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Used : Use. • Not Used : Do not use. |



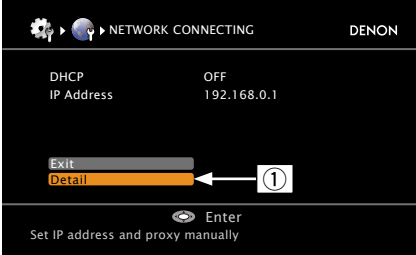
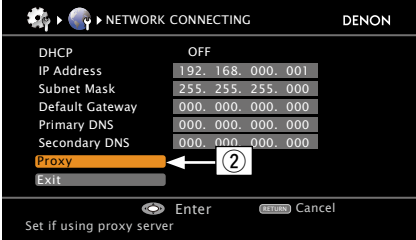
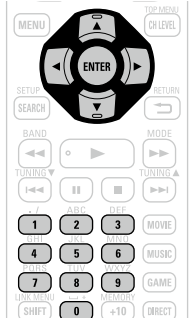
Network Setup

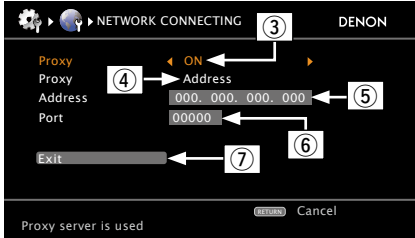
Default settings are underlined.




Make network settings.

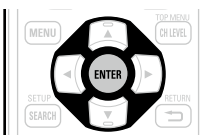
| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|---|
| Network Connecting Make settings for wired LAN. | Only set "Network Connecting" when connecting to a network without a DHCP function.   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> On the menu, select "Network Connecting" – "Detail" and press ENTER. Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ to set "DHCP" to "OFF", then press ENTER. The DHCP function is disabled.  |



| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|---|
| Network Connecting (Continued) | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ or 0–9 to input the address and press ENTER. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> IP Address : Set the IP address within the ranges shown below. The Network Audio function cannot be used if other IP addresses are set. CLASS A: 10.0.0.1 – 10.255.255.254 CLASS B: 172.16.0.1 – 172.31.255.254 CLASS C: 192.168.0.1 – 192.168.255.254 Subnet Mask : When connecting an xDSL modem or terminal adapter directly to this unit, input the subnet mask indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider. Normally input 255.255.255.0. Default Gateway : When connected to a gateway (router), input its IP address. Primary DNS, Secondary DNS : If there is only one DNS address indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider, input it at "Primary DNS". If there are two or more DNS addresses, input the first one at "Secondary DNS". Use ∇ to select "Exit" and press ENTER. Setup is complete. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When connecting to the network via a Proxy server, select "Proxy" and press ENTER (page 109 "Proxy settings"). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you are using a broadband router (DHCP function), there is no need to make the settings at "IP Address" and "Proxy", since the DHCP function is set to "ON" in this unit's default settings. If this unit is being used connected to a network without the DHCP function, the network settings must be made. In this case, some knowledge of networks is required. For details, consult a network administrator. If you cannot connect to the Internet, recheck the connections and settings (page 17). If you do not understand about Internet connection, contact your ISP (Internet Service Provider) or the store from which you purchased your computer. When you want to cancel the setting during IP address input, press RETURN. |





| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|--|
| Network Connecting (Continued) | <p>Proxy settings : Make this setting when connecting to the Internet via a proxy server.</p>   <p>① On the menu, select "Network Connecting" – "Detail" and press ENTER.</p> <p>② Use $\Delta \nabla$ to set "Proxy" and press ENTER.</p>  |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|--|
| Network Connecting (Continued) |  <p>③ Use $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to set "Proxy" to "ON" and press ∇. The proxy server is enabled.</p> <p>④ Use \triangleleft to select the proxy server input method, and then press ∇. Address : Select when inputting by address.</p> <p>⑤ Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ or 0-9 to input the proxy server address or domain name and press ENTER. When "Address" is selected in step ④ : Input the address When "Name" is selected in step ④ : Input the domain name • For character input, see page 85.</p> <p>⑥ Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ or 0-9 to input the proxy server port number and press ENTER.</p> <p>⑦ Use ∇ to select "Exit" and press ENTER. Setup is complete.</p> |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|---|
| Other Network function on/off setting during standby, and PC language setting. | <p>Network Standby : Set the network function on/off during standby.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : Network is on during standby. Main unit operable with a network compatible controller. • OFF : Suspend network function during standby. <p> Set to "ON" when using the web control function.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <p>When "Other" – "Network Standby" is set to "ON", it consumes more standby power.</p> <p>Character : When characters are not displayed correctly, set the MP3 ID3-Tag character code type reproduced by the USB memory device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto : Auto-select character code. • Latin : Select ISO 8859-1 Latin-1. • Japanese : Select Shift-JIS. <p> If the characters are not properly displayed when set to "Auto", set to "Latin" or "Japanese".</p> <p>PC Language : Select computer environment language.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Arabic / Chinese(simplified) / Chinese(traditional) / Czech / Danish / Dutch / English / Finnish / French / German / Greek / Hebrew / Hungarian / Italian / Japanese / Korean / Norwegian / Polish / Portuguese / Portuguese(Brazil) / Russian / Spanish / Swedish / Turkish <p>Friendly Name Edit : The Friendly Name is the name of this unit displayed on the network. Up to 63 characters can be input. The default Friendly Name on first use is "DENON:[AVR-2312CI]".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For character input, see page 85. <p>Default : Restores Friendly Name, which you had changed, to the default setting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes : Reset to the defaults. • No : Do not reset to the defaults. <p> When you select "Default" and press ENTER, the "Return all settings to the default?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press ENTER.</p> |



| Setting items | Setting details |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Other (Continued) | <p>Party Mode Function : Set the Party Mode function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : Enable party mode function. • OFF : Disable party mode function. <p> Refer to page 74, "Party mode function" for more information on the party mode function.</p> <p>Party Start Level : Make settings for volume level when the party mode is started.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Last : The same volume as set before the party mode was started. • --- (0) : Always use the muting on condition when the party mode is started. • -80dB – 18dB (1 – 99) : Start party mode with your preferred volume. <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This can be set when "Party Mode Function" is set to "ON". • This is displayed from 0 to 99 when "Volume Display" (page 113) is set to "Absolute". • You can set to the upper limit set with "Volume Limit" (page 113). <p>Zone Management : See "Zone Management function" (page 75).</p> |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Other (Continued) | <p>Update Notification : Displays a notification message on this unit's menu screen when the latest firmware is released with "Firmware Update". The notification message is displayed for about 20 seconds when the power is turned on. Connect to broadband Internet (☞ page 17) when using this function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : Display update message. • OFF : Do not display update message. <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When you press ENTER during display of the notification message, the "Check for Update" screen is displayed (Refer to page 115 for more information on "Firmware Update"). • Press RETURN  to erase the notification message. <p>Upgrade Notification : Display a notification message on this unit's menu screen when downloadable firmware is released with "Add New Feature". The notification message is displayed for about 20 seconds when the power is turned on. Connect to broadband Internet (☞ page 17) when using this function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : Display upgrade message. • OFF : Do not display upgrade message. <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When you press ENTER during display of the notification message, the "Add New Feature" screen is displayed (Refer to page 115 for more information on "Add New Feature"). • Press RETURN  to erase the notification message. |



| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|--|
| Rhapsody Account Set or change Username and Password (☞ page 48 "Listening to Rhapsody"). | Username / Password / Clear <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For character input, see page 85. |
| Napster Account Set or change Username and Password (☞ page 43 "Listening to Napster"). | Username / Password / Clear <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For character input, see page 85. |
| Network Information Display network information. | Friendly Name / DHCP=ON or OFF / IP Address / MAC Address |



ZONE2 Setup

Default settings are underlined.

Set the audio to play back with multi-zone (ZONE2).

- "ZONE2" is displayed when "ZONE2" is selected with "Amp Assign" ([page 102](#)).


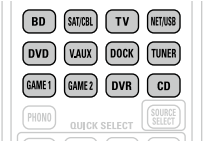
| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|--|
| Bass Adjust low frequency range (bass). | -10dB – +10dB (0dB) |
| Treble Adjust high frequency range (treble). | -10dB – +10dB (0dB) |
| HPF Make settings for cutting the low range to reduce distortion in the bass. | ON : The low range is attenuated. OFF : The low range is not attenuated. |
| Lch Level Adjust the left channel output level. | -12dB – +12dB (0dB) The "Lch Level" can be set when "Channel" (page 112) is set to "Stereo". |
| Rch Level Adjust the right channel output level. | -12dB – +12dB (0dB) The "Rch Level" can be set when "Channel" (page 112) is set to "Stereo". |
| Channel Set the signal output from multi-zone (ZONE2). | Stereo : Select stereo output. Mono : Select mono output. |
| Volume Level Set the volume output level. | Variable : Volume adjustment is enabled by main unit and remote control unit. -40dB (41) : Fix volume at -40 dB. Set when adjusting volume by external amplifier. 0dB (81) : Fix volume at 0 dB. Set when adjusting volume by external amplifier. When "Amp Assign" (page 102) is set to "ZONE2", the "Volume Level" setting is automatically set to "Variable". |
| Volume Limit Make a setting for maximum volume. | OFF : Do not set a maximum volume. -20dB (61) / -10dB (71) / 0dB (81) This is displayed from 0 to 99 when "Volume Display" (page 113) is set to "Absolute". |

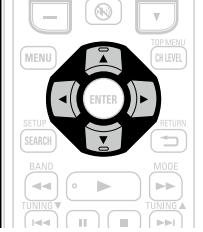


| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|---|
| Power On Level Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on. | Last : Use the memorized setting from the last session. --- (0) : Always mute when power is turned on. -80dB – 18dB (1 – 99) : The volume is adjusted to the set level. This is displayed from 0 to 99 when "Volume Display" (page 113) is set to "Absolute". |
| Mute Level Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on. | Full : The sound is muted entirely. -40dB : The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down. -20dB : The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down. |


Option Setup






Default settings are underlined>.


Make various other settings.

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|---|
| <p>Volume Control Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.</p> | <p>Volume Display : Set how volume is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Relative : Display --dB (Min), in the range -80.5 dB to 18 dB. • Absolute : Display in the range 0 (Min) to 99. <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The "Volume Display" setting is applied also to the "Volume Limit" and "Power On Level" display method. • The "Volume Display" setting applies to all zones. <p>Volume Limit : Make a setting for maximum volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OFF : Do not set a maximum volume. • -20dB (61) / -10dB (71) / 0dB (81) <p>Power On Level : Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Last : Use the memorized setting from the last session. • --- (0) : Always use the muting on condition when power is turned on. • -80dB - 18dB (1 - 99) : The volume is adjusted to the set level. <p>Mute Level : Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Full : The sound is muted entirely. • -40dB : The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down. • -20dB : The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down. |
| <p>Source Delete Remove from the display input sources that are not used.</p> | <p>BD / DVD / TV / SAT/CBL / DVR / GAME1 / GAME2 / V.AUX / DOCK / NET/USB / TUNER / CD : Select input source that is not used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : Use this source. • Delete : Do not use this source. <p>NOTE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Input sources being used in the various zones cannot be deleted. • Input sources set to "Delete" cannot be selected using the input source select button. <p></p> |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|---|
| <p>GUI Make the settings related to displays on the TV screen.</p> | <p>Screensaver : Make screensaver settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : The screensaver is activated during menu display, NET/USB, iPod or Tuner screen display if no operation is performed for an approximately 5-minute continuous period. When you press $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$, the screensaver is cancelled and the screen before that screen saver started is displayed. • OFF : Screensaver is not activated. <p></p> <p>Wall Paper : Set wallpaper to display in the background when playback is stopped, etc.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Picture : Set the background to a picture (DENON logo). • Black : Set the background to black. • Gray : Set the background to gray. • Blue : Set the background to blue. <p>Format : Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NTSC : Select NTSC output. • PAL : Select PAL output. <p></p> <p>"Format" can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press and hold the main unit's PRESET 1 and PRESET 3 for at least 3 seconds. " *Video Format" appears on the display. 2. Press the main unit's TUNER PRESET CH +, - and set the video signal format. 3. Press the main unit's INTERNET RADIO  to complete the setting. <p>NOTE</p> <p>When a format other than the video format of the connected TV is set, the picture will not be displayed properly.</p> <p>Text : Display the details of operation when switching surround mode, input mode, etc.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : Turn display on. • OFF : Turn display off. |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|--|
| GUI (Continued) | <p>Master Volume : Display the master volume during adjustment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bottom : Display at the bottom. • Top : Display at the top. • OFF : Turn display off. <p> When the master volume display is hard to see when superimposed on movie subtitles, set to "Top".</p> <hr/> <p>NET/USB : Set the NET/USB screen display time when the input source is "NET/USB".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Always : Show display continuously. • 30s : Show display for 30 seconds after operation. • 10s : Show display for 10 seconds after operation. • OFF : Turn display off. <hr/> <p>iPod : Set the iPod screen display time when the input source is "DOCK" or "iPod (USB)".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Always : Show display continuously. • 30s : Show display for 30 seconds after operation. • 10s : Show display for 10 seconds after operation. • OFF : Turn display off. <hr/> <p>Tuner : Set the tuner screen display time when the input source is "Tuner".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Always : Show display continuously. • 30s : Show display for 30 seconds after operation. • 10s : Show display for 10 seconds after operation. • OFF : Turn display off. |
| Remote Setup Guide Search a preset code to register in the remote control unit. | See "Registering preset codes" (page 119). |
| Quick Select Name Change the "Quick Select" display title to one you prefer. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Up to 16 characters can be input. • For character input, see page 85. |
| Zone Rename Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Up to 10 characters can be input. • For character input, see page 85. |

| Setting items | Setting details |
|---|--|
| Trigger Out Select the condition for activating Trigger Out for the input source, surround mode, etc. See "TRIGGER OUT jacks" (page 18) for more information on trigger out. | <p><input type="checkbox"/> When setting for zone (MAIN ZONE / ZONE2) Trigger out is activated through linkage to the power of the zone set to "ON".</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> When setting for input source Activate trigger out when the input source set to "ON" is selected.</p> <p> Active for the zone set to "ON" with "When setting for zone".</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> When setting for surround mode Activate trigger out when the surround mode set to "ON" is selected.</p> <p> Active when the "MAIN ZONE" set to "ON" with "When setting for zone" is selected, and when the input source set to "ON" with "When setting for input source" is selected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : Activate trigger on this mode. • --- : Do not activate trigger on this mode. |
| Dimmer Adjust the display brightness of this unit. | <p>Bright : Normal display brightness. Dim : Reduced display brightness. Dark : Very low display brightness. OFF : Turns the display off.</p> <p> Buttons on the main unit can be used for operations. Each time DIMMER is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> |
| Setup Lock Protect settings from inadvertent change. | <p>ON : Turn protection on. OFF : Turn protection off.</p> <p> When canceling the setting, set "Setup Lock" to "OFF".</p> <p>NOTE</p> <p>When "Setup Lock" is set to "ON", the settings listed below can no longer be changed. Also, "SETUP LOCKED!" is displayed if you attempt to operate related settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Menu operations • Channel Level |

| Setting items | Setting details | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---------|-------------|----------------------|------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|--|------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|---|
| Firmware Update Update the firmware of the receiver. | <p>Check for Update : Check for firmware updates. You can also check approximately how long it will take to complete an update.</p> <p>Start : Execute the update process.</p> <p>When updating starts, the power indicator becomes red and the menu screen is shut down. The amount of update time which has elapsed is displayed.</p> <p>When updating is complete, the power indicator becomes green and normal status is resumed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If updating fails, the set automatically retries, but if updating is still not possible, one of the messages shown below is displayed. If the display reads as shown below, check the settings and network environment, then update again. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Updating fail</td> <td>Updating failed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Login failed</td> <td>Failure to log into server.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Server is busy</td> <td>Server is busy. Wait a while then try again.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Connection fail</td> <td>Failure in connecting to server.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Download fail</td> <td>Downloading of the firmware has failed.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Display | Description | Updating fail | Updating failed. | Login failed | Failure to log into server. | Server is busy | Server is busy. Wait a while then try again. | Connection fail | Failure in connecting to server. | Download fail | Downloading of the firmware has failed. |
| Display | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Updating fail | Updating failed. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Login failed | Failure to log into server. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Server is busy | Server is busy. Wait a while then try again. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Connection fail | Failure in connecting to server. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Download fail | Downloading of the firmware has failed. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Add New Feature Display new features that can be downloaded to this unit and perform an update. | <p>Upgrade : Execute the upgrade process.</p> <p>When updating starts, the power indicator becomes red and the menu screen is shut down. The amount of update time which has elapsed is displayed.</p> <p>When upgrading is complete, the power indicator becomes green and normal status is resumed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the upgrade is not successful, an error message identical to those in "Firmware Update" will appear on the display. Check the settings and network environment, then update again. <p>Upgrade Status : Display a list of the additional functions provided by the upgrade.</p> <p> See the DENON website for details about updates.</p> <p>When the procedure is complete, "Registered" is displayed in this menu and updates can be carried out. If the procedure has not been carried out, "Not Registered" is displayed.</p> <p>The ID number shown on this screen is needed when carrying out the procedure.</p> <p>The ID number can also be displayed by pressing and holding the main unit's TUNER PRESET + and TUNER PRESET - for at least 3 seconds.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Notes concerning use of "Firmware Update" and "Add New Feature" |
|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In order to use these functions, you must have the correct system requirements and settings for a broadband Internet connection (page 17). • Do not turn off the power until updating or upgrading is completed. • Even with a broadband connection to the Internet, approximately 1 hour is required for the updating/upgrading procedure to be completed. • Once updating/upgrade starts, normal operations on this unit cannot be performed until updating/upgrading is completed. • Furthermore, updating/upgrading the firmware may reset the backup data for the parameters, etc. set for this unit. • If the update or upgrade fails, press and hold the ON/STANDBY on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. "Update retry" appears on the display and update restarts from the point at which update failed. If the error continues despite this, check the network environment. |



- Information regarding the "Firmware Update" function and "Add New Feature" will be announced on the DENON web site each time related plans are defined.
- When usable new firmware is released with "Firmware Update" or "Add New Feature", a notification message is displayed on the menu screen. When you do not want to be notified, set "Update Notification" ([page 111](#)) and "Upgrade Notification" ([page 111](#)) to "OFF".

| Setting items | Setting details |
|--|--|
| Maintenance Mode Use when receiving maintenance from a DENON service engineer or custom installer. | <p>NOTE</p> <p>Only use this function if so instructed by a DENON serviceperson or installer.</p> |



Language

Default settings are underlined.

Set the language for display on the menu screen.

Setting details

English / Español



"Language" can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed.

1. Press and hold the main unit's **PRESET 1** and **PRESET 3** for at least 3 seconds.

"*Video Format" appears on the display.

2. Press the main unit's **STATUS** and set "*GUI Language".

3. Press the main unit's **TUNER PRESET CH +, -** and set the language.

4. Press the main unit's **INTERNET RADIO**  to complete the setting.



Show information about receiver settings, input signals, etc.

| Items | Setting details | | |
|--|---|---------------------------------|--|
| Status Show information about current settings. | <input type="checkbox"/> MAIN ZONE This item shows information about settings for MAIN ZONE. The information displayed differs according to the input source. Select Source / Name / Surround Mode / Input Mode / Decode Mode / Assign / Video Select / Video Mode / Content Type etc. | | |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> ZONE2 This item shows information about settings for ZONE2. Power / Select Source / Volume Level | | |
| Audio Input Signal Show information about audio input signals. | Surround Mode : The currently set surround mode. Signal : The input signal type. fs : The input signal's sampling frequency. Format : The number of channels in the input signal (front, surround, LFE). Offset : The dialogue normalization correction value. Flag : This is displayed when inputting signals including a surround back channel. "MATRIX" is displayed with Dolby Digital EX and DTS-ES Matrix signals, "DISCRETE" with DTS-ES Discrete signals. | | |
| | <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;">Dialogue normalization function</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> This function is automatically activated when playing Dolby Digital sources. It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources. The correction value can be checked using the STATUS on the main unit. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;"> Dial.Norm Offset - 4dB </div> The figure is the corrected value. This cannot be changed. </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Dialogue normalization function | This function is automatically activated when playing Dolby Digital sources. It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources. The correction value can be checked using the STATUS on the main unit. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;"> Dial.Norm Offset - 4dB </div> The figure is the corrected value. This cannot be changed. |
| Dialogue normalization function | | | |
| This function is automatically activated when playing Dolby Digital sources. It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources. The correction value can be checked using the STATUS on the main unit. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;"> Dial.Norm Offset - 4dB </div> The figure is the corrected value. This cannot be changed. | | | |
| HDMI Information Show information about HDMI input/output signals and monitor. | Signal Information • Resolution / Color Space / Pixel Depth | | |
| | Monitor • Interface / Supported Resolution | | |

| Items | Setting details |
|--|--|
| Auto Surround Mode Show information about auto surround mode settings. | Analog/PCM 2ch / Digital 2ch / Digital 5.1ch / Multi ch |
| Quick Select Show information about "Quick select function" (page 71) settings. | Quick Select 1 / Quick Select 2 / Quick Select 3 / Quick Select 4 / ZONE2 Quick Select 1 / ZONE2 Quick Select 2 / ZONE2 Quick Select 3 / ZONE2 Quick Select 4 • Name / Volume Level / Select Source / Video Select / MultEQ® XT / Dynamic EQ® / Dynamic Volume® / Auto Surround Mode Analog/PCM 2ch / Auto Surround Mode Digital 2ch / Auto Surround Mode Digital 5.1ch / Auto Surround Mode Multi ch |
| Preset Channel Show information about preset channels. | Preset 1 – 3 A1 – G8 "Preset 1 – 3" is displayed when the input source is "NET/USB". |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">TUNER</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; margin-left: 10px;">NET/USB</div> | |

Operating the connected devices by remote control unit

Registering the supplied preset codes in the remote control unit enables you to operate devices made by other manufacturers.

Operating AV devices

1 Press **ZONE SELECT** to select a zone for operation.

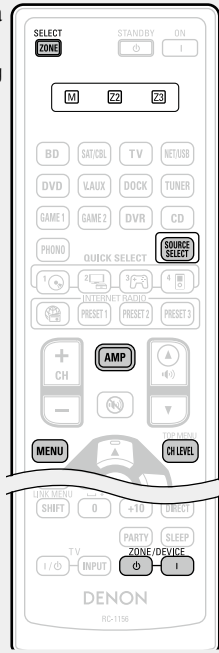
The zone mode indicator corresponding to the operating zone lights.

- The mode switches each time **ZONE SELECT** is pressed.

M Select for the operations in MAIN ZONE.

Z2 Select for the operations in ZONE2.

Z3 Not used.



2 Press the input source select button (page 26).

- The input source for the zone selected in step 1 is switched.
- The operation mode of the remote control unit is switched as shown in the table.

| Input source select button | Input source of this unit | Operation mode |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| | | Devices controllable with the remote control unit |
| AMP | – | This unit (AMP-operation) *2 |
| BD *1 | BD | Device registered on the BD button |
| SAT/CBL *1 | SAT/CBL | Device registered on the SAT/CBL button |
| TV *1 | TV | Device registered on the TV button |
| NET/USB | NET/USB | Network function |
| DVD *1 | DVD | Device registered on the DVD button |
| V.AUX *1 | V.AUX | Device registered on the V.AUX button |
| DOCK | DOCK | Control dock for iPod |
| TUNER | TUNER | Radio of this unit |
| GAME1 *1 | GAME1 | Device registered on the GAME1 button |
| GAME2 *1 | GAME2 | Device registered on the GAME2 button |
| DVR *1 | DVR | Device registered on the DVR button |
| CD *1 | CD | Device registered on the CD button |

*1 If a preset code is registered for this button, the remote control unit of this unit can control another devices.

*2 This operation mode enables you to operate iPod, USB, Control dock for iPod, Network function and TUNER.



When the **SOURCE SELECT** is pressed, the AMP-operation mode starts automatically.

NOTE

If the mode of the remote control unit is set to other than AMP-operation mode, press **AMP** to switch the remote control unit to the AMP-operation mode to perform the following operations:

- For menu operation by pressing **MENU**
- For setting the channel level of the unit by pressing **CH LEVEL**
- For turning power in each zone on or off by pressing **ZONE/DEVICE I** or **ZONE/DEVICE O**.

3 Operate this unit or the device whose input source is switched.


• For details, refer to the operating instructions for each device. For operations of iPod, TUNER and USB memory device, see the following pages.

- iPod (page 30, 32)
- TUNER (page 34)
- Network function (page 39, 40, 42, 44, 47, 49)
- USB memory device (page 51)

Registering preset codes

When preset codes are registered in the included remote control unit, it can then be used to operate any devices you have, such as DVD players or TVs made by different manufacturers. In this menu, you can search and display the preset codes that can be preset in the included remote control unit.











Buttons used for operating the devices

- ① **ZONE/DEVICE I, ZONE/DEVICE 0**
For switching power of each device on or off.
- ② **Δ∇◀▶, ENTER, RETURN** 
For menu operation of each device.
- ③ **MENU, SETUP, TOP MENU**
For displaying the menu of each device.
- ④ **▶, ■, II, ◀◀, ▶▶, I◀◀, ▶▶I**
- ⑤ Number button (**0 – 9, +10**)
- ⑥ **CH +, CH –**
- ⑦ **TV I/0, TV INPUT**
For operating a TV
This button is enabled in any mode.

For details on operation with the remote control unit, see pages [30](#), [32](#), [34](#), [39](#), [40](#), [42](#), [44](#), [47](#), [49](#), [51](#), [121](#).

Default settings for preset codes

The devices shown below are registered for each input source button as default. Settings can be changed according to the devices to be used.

| Input source select button | Category | Brand | Preset code |
|---|----------------------------------|--------------------|--------------|
|  | Blu-ray Disc player | DENON | 32258 |
|  | Satellite set top box | DirecTV | 01377 |
|  | Television | SONY | 10810 |
|  | DVD player | DENON | 32134 |
|  | Digital camcorder (DVD recorder) | Panasonic | 21378 |
|  | Control dock for iPod | DENON | 72516 |
|  | Cable set top box | Motorola | 01376 |
|  | Cable set top box | Scientific Atlanta | 01877 |
|  | DVD recorder | Tivo | 20739 |
|  | CD player | DENON | 42867 |

* If a control dock for iPod is not to be used, the preset code for another device can be set to **DOCK**.

NOTE

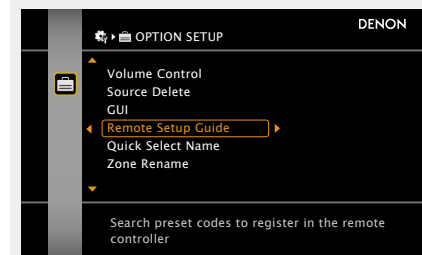
The preset code cannot be registered to **NET/USB, TUNER** or **PHONO**.

1 Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch the zone mode to **M** (MAIN ZONE).
The **M** indicator lights.

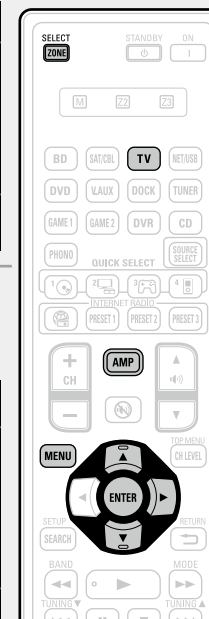
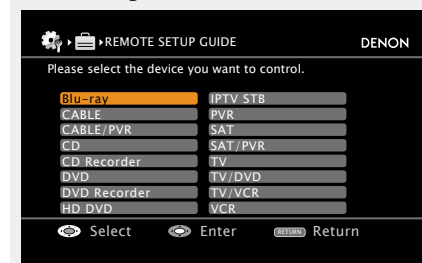
2 Press **AMP** to set the remote control unit to AMP-operation mode.

3 Press **MENU**.
The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

4 Use **Δ∇** to select “SYSTEM SETUP” – “Option Setup” – “Remote Setup Guide” and then press **ENTER** or **▶**.

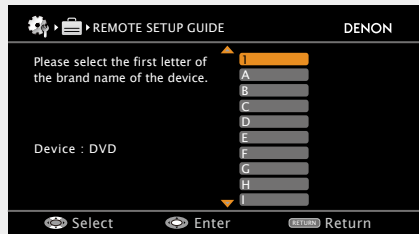


5 Pressing **Δ∇**, select the device category for preset registration. Then press **ENTER**.



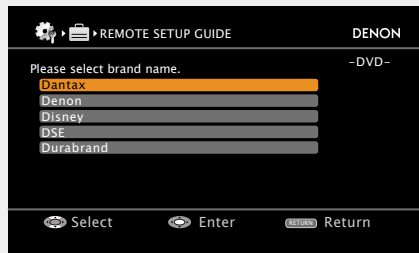
• For “TV”, “TV/DVD” or “TV/VCR” categories, only the preset code for **TV** can be registered.

6 Pressing Δ / ∇ , select the first letter of the device brand name. Then press **ENTER**.



- The first character is displayed as 1, A to Z. (Initials for the brand are displayed for each category.)
For brand names that start with numbers and symbols, select "1".

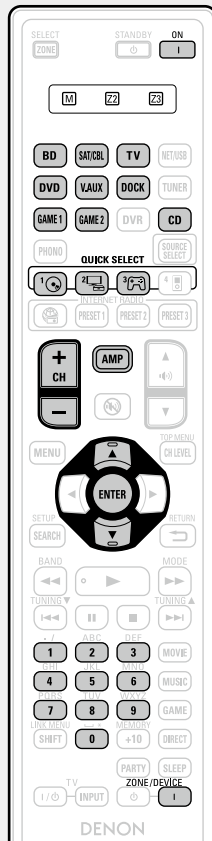
7 Pressing Δ / ∇ , select the device brand name. Then press **ENTER**.



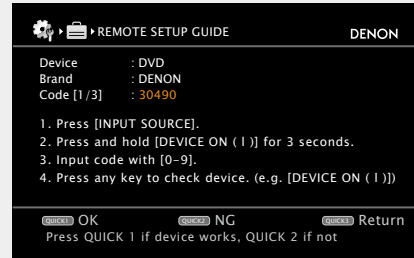
- When there are several pages of brand names, the pages can be switched by pressing the remote control unit's **CH +** or **CH -**.

NOTE

If the desired brand name is not listed, the supplied remote control unit cannot control the device. Use the remote control unit supplied with the device to be used.



8 The procedures for registering remote control codes and remote control preset registration are displayed.



NOTE

If a wrong brand name is selected, press **QUICK SELECT 3**. The following screen is displayed:



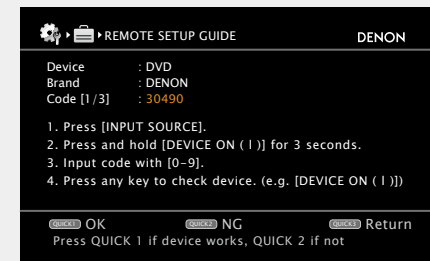
Press **AMP** then **ENTER** to return to step 7.

9 Press the input source button on which the preset code is to be registered (**BD, SAT/CBL, TV, DVD, V.AUX, DOCK, GAME1, GAME2** or **CD**).

- For **TV**, only the preset code for the categories "TV", "TV/DVD", or "TV/VCR" can be registered.

10 Press and hold **ZONE/DEVICE 1** for at least 3 seconds. The zone mode indicator flashes twice.

11 Enter a five-digit code using **0 - 9**. Press the buttons with an interval less than 10 seconds.



- When the code is registered.
→ The zone mode indicator flashes twice.
- When the code is not registered correctly
→ The mode indicator slowly flashes once. Perform from step 9 again.
- When an input number is not correct
→ Press **ON** once then perform the operations from step 9 again.

12 Operate the device being used to check the operation.

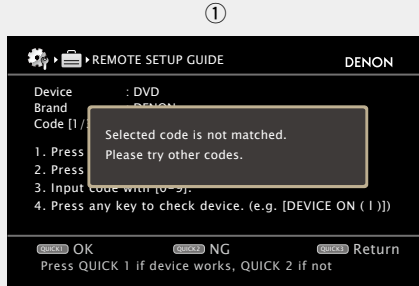
- If the device is operating, press **QUICK SELECT 1**.
→ Go to step 13.
- If the device is not operating, press **QUICK SELECT 2**.
→ Go to step 14.

13 The screen shown below is displayed, and registration of the preset code is completed.

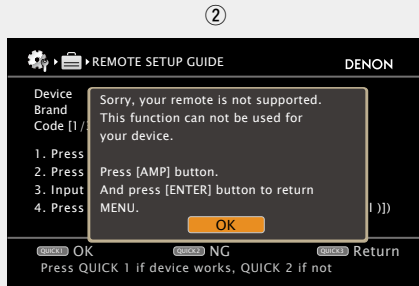


- The menu screen is retrieved. Press **AMP** then **ENTER**.

14 Either of the screens below is displayed.



• The screen is displayed for 3 seconds, then the next preset registration screen is displayed automatically.



[If screen ① is displayed]

The device may be operating with the preset code displayed next. The preset registration screen is displayed. Repeat steps 9 to 12.

[If screen ② is displayed]

The device cannot be controlled with the remote control unit supplied with this unit. Use the remote control unit supplied with the device to be used. The menu screen is retrieved. Press **AMP** then **ENTER**.



Some manufacturers use more than one type of remote control code. Preset codes to change the number and verify correct operation.

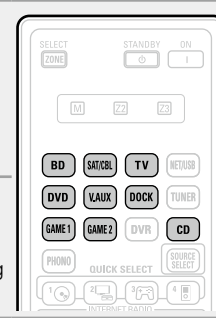
NOTE

Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate.

Operating devices

The supplied remote control unit can control a device other than this unit.

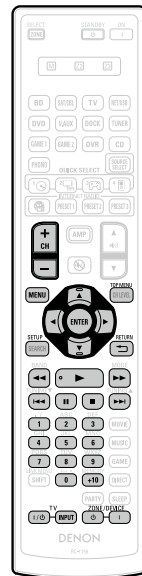
1 Press the input source select button to which the preset code for the device you want to operate has been registered (page 118).



2 Operate the device.

• For details, refer to the device's operating instructions.

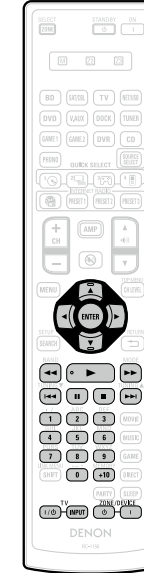
Blu-ray Disc player / HD-DVD player / DVD player operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|-------------------|--|
| CH +, - | Switch channels (up/down) |
| MENU | (Popup) Menu |
| TOP MENU | Top menu |
| △▽◀▶ | Cursor operation |
| ENTER | Enter |
| SETUP | Setup |
| RETURN | Return |
| ◀▶▶▶ | Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward) |
| ▶ | Playback |
| ◀▶▶▶ | Auto search (cue) |
| | Pause |
| ■ | Stop |
| 0-9, +10 | Select title, chapter or channel selection |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |
| ZONE/DEVICE I | Power on* |
| ZONE/DEVICE ⏻ | Power standby* |

* This may power some devices on/standby.

CD player / CD recorder operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|-------------------|---|
| △▽◀▶ | Cursor operation |
| ENTER | Enter |
| ◀▶▶▶ | Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward) |
| ▶ | Playback |
| ◀▶▶▶ | Auto search (cue) |
| | Pause |
| ■ | Stop |
| 0-9, +10 | Track selection |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |
| ZONE/DEVICE I | Power on* |
| ZONE/DEVICE ⏻ | Power standby* |

* This may power some devices on/standby.

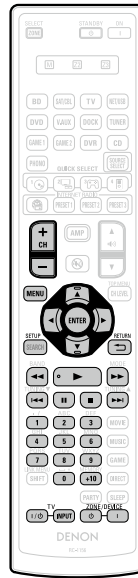
❑ DVD recorder (DVR) / Personal video recorder (PVR) / video cassette recorder (VCR) operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|--|--|
| CH +, - | Switch channels (up/down) |
| MENU | Menu |
| $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ | Cursor operation |
| ENTER | Enter |
| SETUP | Setup |
| RETURN ↶ | Return |
| $\ll \gg$ | Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward) |
| \blacktriangleright | Playback |
| $\ll \ll \ll \gg \gg \gg \gg$ | Auto search (cue) |
| II | Pause |
| ■ | Stop |
| 0 - 9, +10 | Select title, chapter or channel selection |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |
| ZONE/DEVICE I | Power on* |
| ZONE/DEVICE ⏻ | Power standby* |

* This may power some devices on/standby.

❑ TV operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|--|---|
| CH +, - | Switch channels (up/down) |
| MENU | Menu |
| $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ | Cursor operation |
| ENTER | Enter |
| SETUP | Setup |
| RETURN ↶ | Return |
| $\ll \gg$ | Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward) |
| \blacktriangleright | Playback |
| $\ll \ll \ll \gg \gg \gg \gg$ | Auto search (cue) |
| II | Pause |
| ■ | Stop |
| 0 - 9, +10 | Channel selection |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |
| ZONE/DEVICE I | Power on* |
| ZONE/DEVICE ⏻ | Power standby* |

* This may power some devices on/standby.

❑ Set top box for satellite (SAT) / Cable (CBL) / IP TV operation



| Operation buttons | Function |
|--|---|
| CH +, - | Switch channels (up/down) |
| MENU | Menu |
| $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ | Cursor operation |
| ENTER | Enter |
| SETUP | Guide |
| RETURN ↶ | Return |
| $\ll \gg$ | Manual search (fast-reverse/fast-forward) |
| \blacktriangleright | Playback |
| $\ll \ll \ll \gg \gg \gg \gg$ | Auto search (cue) |
| II | Pause |
| ■ | Stop |
| 0 - 9, +10 | Channel selection |
| TV I / ⏻ | TV power on/standby (Default : SONY) |
| TV INPUT | Switch TV input (Default : SONY) |
| ZONE/DEVICE I | Power on* |
| ZONE/DEVICE ⏻ | Power standby* |

* This may power some devices on/standby.

Specifying the zone used with the main remote control unit

When the **ZONE SELECT** button is pressed, only the set zone can be operated with the remote control unit.

1 Press and hold **ZONE/DEVICE 1** for at least 3 seconds.

The zone mode indicator flashes twice.

2 Press **ZONE SELECT**.

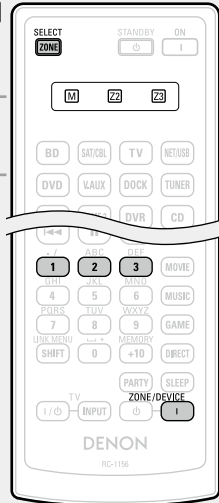
The zone mode indicator flashes twice.

3 Press **1 – 3** to set.

The zone mode indicator flashes twice.

[Settable items]

- 1 When only using "MAIN ZONE"
- 2 When using "MAIN ZONE" / "ZONE2"
- 3 When using "MAIN ZONE" / "ZONE2" / "ZONE3" (Default)



Resetting the remote control unit

Settings for the remote control unit are returned to the default values.

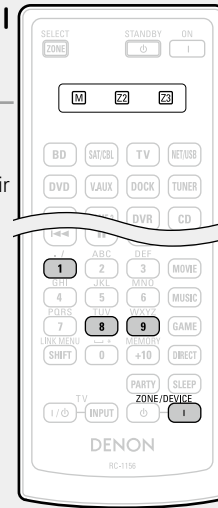
1 Press and hold **ZONE/DEVICE 1** for at least 3 seconds.

The zone mode indicator flashes twice.

2 Press **9, 8 and 1**, in that order.






The 'M' indicator flashes four times.

All the settings are restored to their defaults.



Information

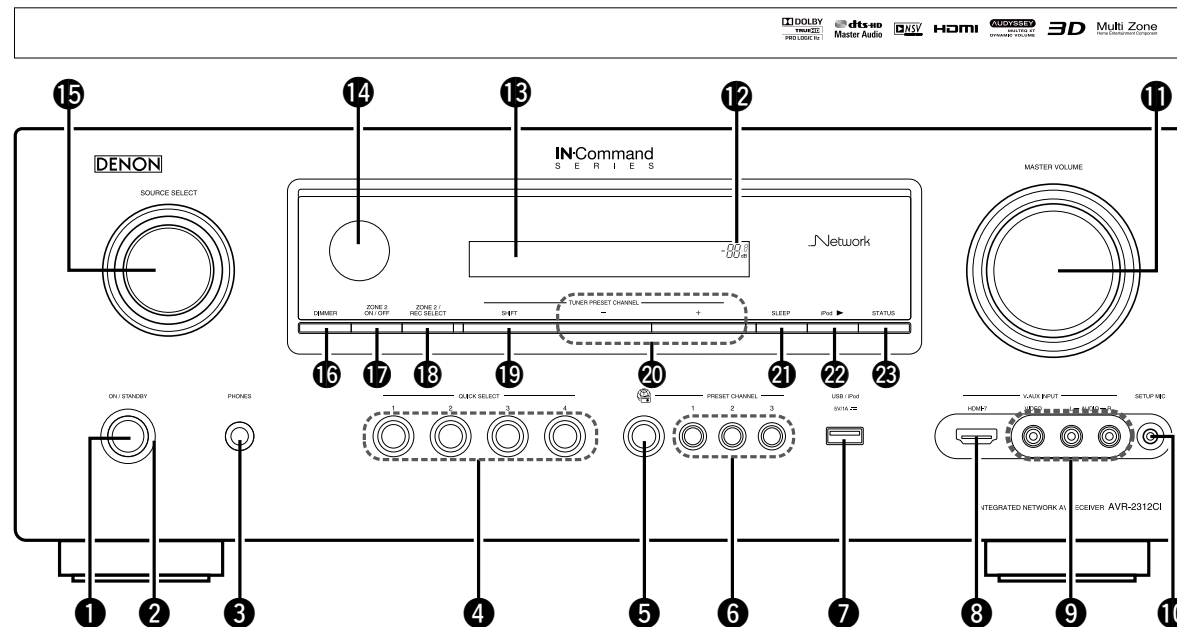
Here, we list various information related to this unit.
Please refer to this information as needed.


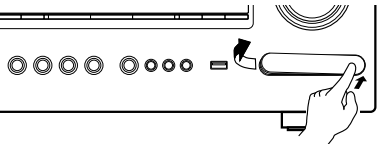
- Part names and functions  [page 125](#)
- Other information  [page 130](#)
- Troubleshooting  [page 140](#)
- Specifications  [page 145](#)
- Index  [page 146](#)

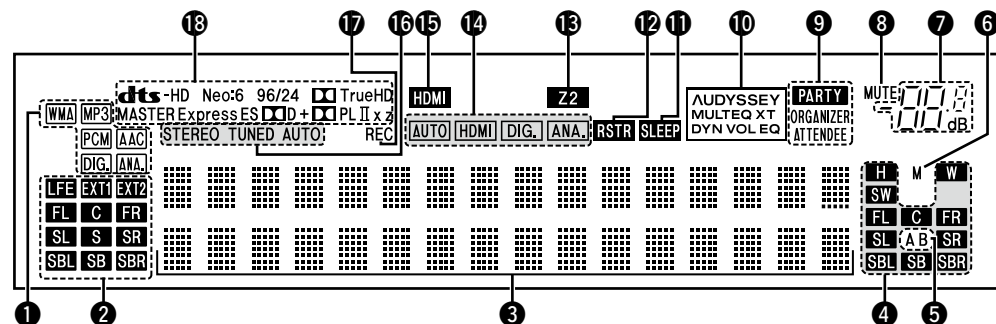
Part names and functions

Front panel

For buttons not explained here, see the page indicated in parentheses ().



- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>1 Power operation button (ON/STANDBY) (5) Turns power to this unit on and off (standby).</p> <p>2 Power indicator (5)</p> <p>3 Headphones jack (PHONES) When the headphones are plugged into this jack, audio will no longer be output from the connected speakers.</p> <p>NOTE To prevent hearing loss, do not raise the volume level excessively when using headphones.</p> <p>4 QUICK SELECT buttons (71, 81)</p> <p>5 INTERNET RADIO button () (37)</p> <p>6 PRESET CHANNEL buttons (1 - 3) (38)</p> | <p>7 USB/iPod port (15)</p> <p>8 HDMI connector (8)</p> <p>9 V.AUX INPUT connectors (14) Remove the cap covering the connectors when you want to use them.</p>  <p>10 SETUP MIC jack (21, 65)</p> <p>11 MASTER VOLUME control knob (27)</p> <p>12 Master volume indicator</p> <p>13 Display (126)</p> | <p>14 Remote control sensor (129)</p> <p>15 SOURCE SELECT knob (26, 80)</p> <p>16 DIMMER button (114)</p> <p>17 ZONE 2 ON/OFF button (80)</p> <p>18 ZONE 2 / REC SELECT button (72, 80)</p> <p>19 SHIFT button (33, 38, 85)</p> <p>20 Tuner preset channel buttons (TUNER PRESET CHANNEL +, -) (34)</p> <p>21 SLEEP button (69, 81)</p> <p>22 iPod play button (iPod ▶) (32)</p> <p>23 STATUS button (117)</p> |
|---|--|--|



1 Input signal indicators

2 Input signal channel indicators

These light when digital signals are input.

When playing HD Audio sources, the **EXT1** indicator lights when a signal from an extension channel (a channel other than the front, center, surround, surround back or LFE channel) is input.

If there are two or more extension channels, the **EXT1** and **EXT2** indicators light.

3 Information display

The input source name, surround mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

4 Output signal channel indicators

Lights when audio signals are being output from the speakers.

5 Front speaker indicator

This lights according to the setting of the front A and B speakers.

6 Monitor output indicators

This indicator lights up when an HDMI monitor is connected.

7 Master volume indicator

8 MUTE indicator

This lights when the mute mode is selected ([page 27](#)).

9 PARTY indicators

These light during party mode ([page 74](#) "Party mode function").

• ORGANIZER

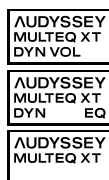
This lights to indicate that party mode has started as Organizer.

• ATTENDEE

This lights to indicate that party mode has started as Attendee.

10 Audyssey® indicators

Lights up as follows, depending on the setting of "MultEQ® XT", ([page 98](#)), "Dynamic EQ®" ([page 98](#)) and "Dynamic Volume®" ([page 98](#)).



When "MultEQ® XT", "Dynamic EQ®" and "Dynamic Volume®" are "ON".

When "MultEQ® XT" and "Dynamic EQ®" are "ON" and "Dynamic Volume®" is "OFF".

When "MultEQ® XT" is "ON" and "Dynamic EQ®" and "Dynamic Volume®" are "OFF".

11 Sleep timer indicator

This lights when the sleep mode is selected ([page 69, 81](#)).

12 RESTORER indicator

This lights when the RESTORER mode is selected ([page 99](#)).

13 Multi-zone indicators

This lights up when ZONE2 (separate room) power is turned on ([page 80](#)).

14 Input mode indicators

Set the audio input modes for the different input sources ([page 91](#)).

15 HDMI indicator

This lights when playing using HDMI connections.

16 Tuner reception mode indicators

These light according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to "TUNER".

STEREO : In the FM mode, this lights up when receiving stereo broadcasts.

TUNED : Lights up when the broadcast is properly tuned in.

AUTO : Lights up when in the auto tuning mode.

17 Recording output source indicator

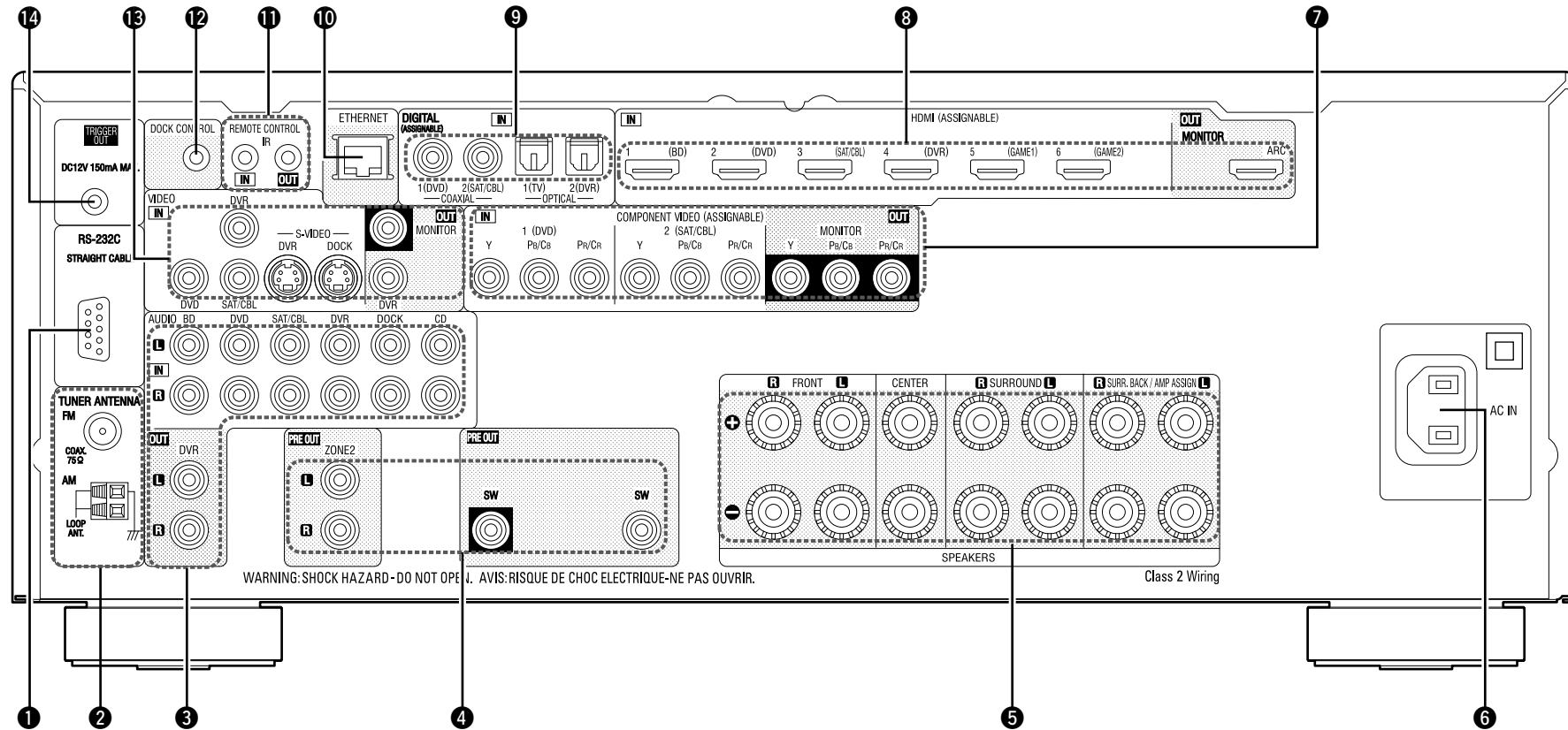
This lights when the REC OUT mode is selected.

18 Decoder indicators

These light when the respective decoders are operating.

Rear panel

See the page indicated in parentheses ().



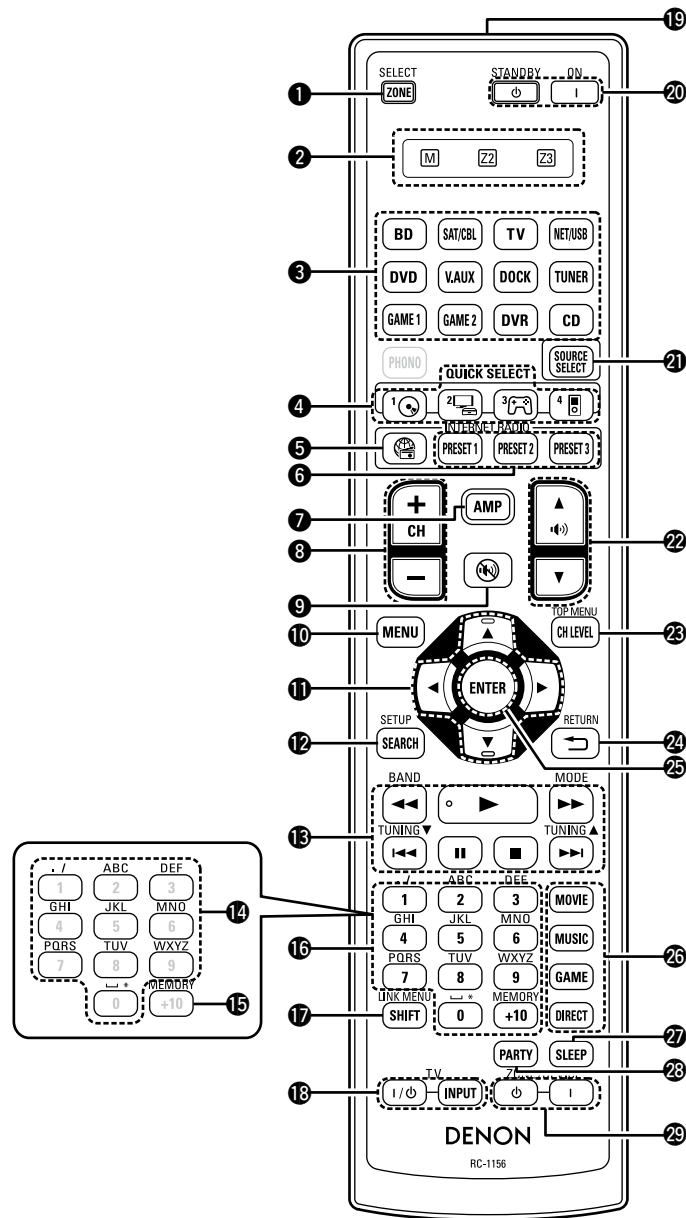
- ① RS-232C connector (18)
- ② FM/AM antenna terminals (16)
- ③ Analog audio connectors (11, 12, 13, 16)
- ④ PRE OUT connectors (6, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64)
- ⑤ Speaker terminals (6, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64)
- ⑥ AC inlet (AC IN) (5)
- ⑦ COMPONENT VIDEO connectors (10, 11, 12)
- ⑧ HDMI connectors (3, 8)
- ⑨ Digital audio connectors (10, 11, 12, 13)
- ⑩ ETHERNET connector (17)
- ⑪ REMOTE CONTROL jacks (18)
- ⑫ DOCK CONTROL jack (14)
- ⑬ S-VIDEO/VIDEO connectors (10, 11, 12, 13, 14)
- ⑭ TRIGGER OUT jack (18)

NOTE

Do not touch the inner pins of the connectors on the rear panel. Electrostatic discharge may cause permanent damage to the unit.

Remote control unit

For buttons not explained here, see the page indicated in parentheses ().



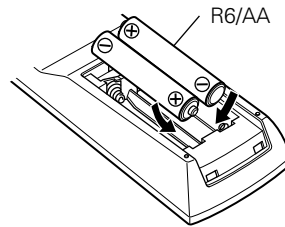
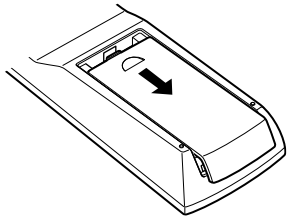
- 1 ZONE SELECT button (80, 118)
- 2 Zone mode indicators (118)
- 3 Input source select buttons (26, 80)
- 4 QUICK SELECT buttons (71, 81)
- 5 INTERNET RADIO button (📶) (37)
- 6 Preset channel buttons (PRESET 1 – 3) (38)
- 7 AMP button (118)
- 8 Channel buttons (CH +, -) (33, 38, 121, 122)
- 9 Muting button (🔇) (27, 80)
- 10 MENU button (87)
- 11 Cursor buttons (▲▼◀▶) (83, 84, 85, 86, 87)
- 12 SEARCH button (29, 31, 34, 35, 43, 50, 86)
- 13 System buttons (30, 32, 39, 40, 42, 44, 47, 49, 51, 121, 122)
 - Search buttons (◀◀, ▶▶)
 - Skip buttons (◀◀, ▶▶)
 - Play button (▶)
 - Pause button (⏸)
 - Stop button (■)
- Tuner system buttons (34)
 - FM/AM band switching button (BAND)
 - Tuning mode button (MODE)
 - Tuning up / Tuning down buttons (TUNING ▲▼)
- 14 Character buttons (86)
- 15 MEMORY button (33, 38, 39)
- 16 Number buttons (33, 34, 38, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123)
- 17 SHIFT button (33, 38, 85)
- 18 TV operation buttons (TV / INPUT) (121, 122)
- 19 Remote control signal transmitter (129)
- 20 Power buttons (ON / STANDBY) (5)
- 21 SOURCE SELECT button (27)
- 22 Master volume control buttons (🔇) ▲▼ (27, 80)
- 23 Channel level button (CH LEVEL) (70)
- 24 RETURN button (↩) (87)
- 25 ENTER button (83, 84, 85, 86, 87)
- 26 Surround mode buttons (52)
 - MOVIE button
 - MUSIC button
 - GAME button
 - DIRECT button
- 27 SLEEP button (69, 81)
- 28 PARTY button (74)
- 29 ZONE/DEVICE power buttons (80, 121, 122)

NOTE

The **PHONO** button cannot be used.

Inserting the batteries

- ① Slide the rear lid in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
- ② Load the two batteries properly as indicated by the marks in the battery compartment.



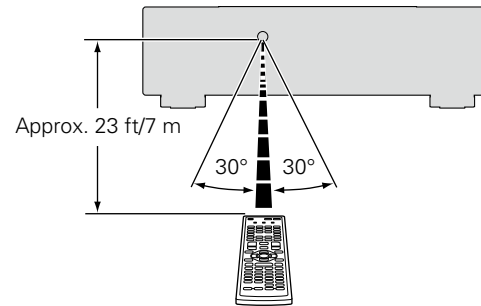
- ③ Put the rear cover back on.

NOTE

- Insert the specified batteries in the remote control unit.
- Replace the batteries with new ones if the set does not operate even when the remote control unit is operated close to the unit. (The supplied batteries are only for verifying operation.)
- When inserting the batteries, be sure to do so in the proper direction, following the \oplus and \ominus marks in the battery compartment.
- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
 - Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
 - Do not use two different types of batteries.
 - Do not attempt to charge dry batteries.
 - Do not short-circuit, disassemble, heat or dispose of batteries in flames.
 - Do not keep the battery in a place exposed to direct sunlight or in places with extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater.
- If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.
- Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
- Used batteries should be disposed of in accordance with the local regulations regarding battery disposal.
- The remote control unit may function improperly if rechargeable batteries are used.

Operating range of the remote control unit

Point the remote control unit at the remote sensor when operating it.



NOTE

- The set may function improperly or the remote control unit may not operate if the remote control sensor is exposed to direct sunlight, strong artificial light from an inverter type fluorescent lamp or infrared light.
- When using 3D video devices that transmit radio communication signals (such as infrared signals etc) between the various units (such as the monitor, 3D glasses, 3D transmitter unit etc), the remote control unit may not operate due to interference from those radio communication signals. If this occurs, adjust the direction and distance of the 3D communication for each unit, and check that the remote control unit operation is not affected by these signals.

Other information

- ❑ **Trademark information** (👉 [page 130](#))
- ❑ **Surround** (👉 [page 131](#))
- ❑ **Relationship between video signals and monitor output** (👉 [page 135](#))
- ❑ **Explanation of terms** (👉 [page 137](#))

Trademark information

This product uses the following technologies:



Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic" and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,226,616; 6,487,535; 7,212,872; 7,333,929; 7,392,195; 7,272,567 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS-HD, DTS-HD Master Audio, and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



HDMI, the HDMI Logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.



Manufactured under license from Audyssey Laboratories™. U.S. and foreign patents pending. Audyssey MultEQ® XT is a registered trademark of Audyssey Laboratories. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is a registered trademark of Audyssey Laboratories. Audyssey Dynamic Volume® is a registered trademark of Audyssey Laboratories.



"Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

AirPlay, the AirPlay logo, iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. iPad is a trademark of Apple Inc.

- Individual users are permitted to use iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch for private copy and playback of non-copyrighted contents and contents whose copy and playback is permitted by law. Copyright infringement is prohibited by law.



Windows Media and the Windows logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Surround

This unit is equipped with a digital signal processing circuit that lets you play program sources in the surround mode to achieve the same sense of presence as in a movie theater.

Surround modes and surround parameters

This table shows the speakers that can be used in each surround mode and the surround parameters adjustable in each surround mode.

Symbols in the table

- This indicates the audio output channels or surround parameters that can be set.
- ⊙ This indicates the audio output channels. The output channels depend on the settings of "Speaker Config." (page 102).

| Surround mode (page 52) | Channel output | | | | | | Surround Parameters (page 95) | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|--------|--------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| | Front L/R | Center | Surround L/R | Surround Back L/R | Front Height L/R | Subwoofer | Mode (page 95) | Cinema EQ. *6 (page 95) | DRC *10 (page 95) | D. COMP *11 (page 95) | LFE *12 (page 95) | Delay Time (page 95) | Effect Level (page 95) | Room Size (page 95) |
| DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (2channel)*1 | ○ | | | | | ⊙*4 | | | ○ | ○ | | | | |
| DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (Multi-channel)*1 | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*2 | ⊙*2 | ○ | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | |
| STEREO | ○ | | | | | ○ | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | |
| MULTI CH IN | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | ○*7 | | | ○ | | | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIz | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | | ⊙ | ○ | ○*5 | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | | ○ | ○ | ○*8 | ○ | ○ | | | | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC II | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | | | ○ | ○ | ○*9 | ○ | ○ | | | | |
| DTS NEO:6 | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | | ○ | ○ | ○*8 | ○ | ○ | | | | |
| DOLBY DIGITAL | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | ○*7 | | ○ | ○ | | | |
| DOLBY DIGITAL Plus | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | ○*7 | | ○ | ○ | | | |
| DOLBY TrueHD | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | ○*7 | ○ | | ○ | | | |
| DTS SURROUND | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | ○*7 | | ○ | ○ | | | |
| DTS 96/24 | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | ○*7 | | ○ | ○ | | | |
| DTS-HD | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | ○*7 | | ○ | ○ | | | |
| DTS Express | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | ○*7 | | ○ | ○ | | | |
| MULTI CH STEREO | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | | | ○ | ○ | | | |
| ROCK ARENA | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | | | ○ | ○ | | ○ | ○ |
| JAZZ CLUB | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | | | ○ | ○ | | ○ | ○ |
| MONO MOVIE | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | | | ○ | ○ | | ○ | ○ |
| VIDEO GAME | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | | | ○ | ○ | | ○ | ○ |
| MATRIX | ○ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙ | ⊙*3 | ○ | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | | |
| VIRTUAL | ○ | | | | | ○ | | | | ○ | ○ | | | |

- *1 During playback in PURE DIRECT mode, the surround parameters are the same as in DIRECT mode.
- *2 A signal for each channel contained in an input signal is output as audio.
- *3 If "Surround Parameters" – "PLIIz Height" (page 96) is set to "ON", sound is output from the front height speakers.
- *4 Only when "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE+Main" (page 103), sound is output from the subwoofer.
- *5 If this surround mode is selected, only the "Height" mode setting is available for "Surround Parameters" – "Mode" (page 95).
- *6 For HD Audio whose sampling frequency of an input signal is more than 96 kHz, this sound parameter cannot be set.
- *7 This item cannot be set when "Surround Parameters" – "Surround Back" (page 96) is set to "PLIIx Music".
- *8 This item can be selected when "Surround Parameters" – "Mode" (page 95) is set to "Cinema".
- *9 This item can be selected when "Surround Parameters" – "Mode" (page 95) is set to "Cinema" or "Pro Logic".
- *10 This item can be selected when a Dolby TrueHD signal is played.
- *11 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal is played.
- *12 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.

| Surround mode (page 52) | Surround Parameters (page 95) | | | | | | | | Tone *16 (page 97) | Audyssey Settings*18 (page 98) | | | RESTORER *21 (page 99) | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| | Height Gain (page 96) | PLIIz Height *14 (page 96) | AFDM *15 (page 96) | Surround Back (page 96) | Subwoofer (page 97) | PRO LOGIC II/IIx Music mode only | | | | NEO:6 Music mode only | MultEQ® XT (page 98) | Dynamic EQ® *19 (page 98) | | Dynamic Volume® *20 (page 98) |
| | | | | | | Panorama (page 95) | Dimension (page 95) | Center Width (page 95) | | | | | | |
| DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (2 channel)*1 | | | | | ○*4 | | | | | | | | | |
| DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (Multi-channel)*1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| STEREO | | | | | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| MULTI CH IN | ○*13 | ○ | | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIz | ○ | ○ | | | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx | | | | ○ | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC II | | ○ | | ○ | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DTS NEO:6 | | | | ○ | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DOLBY DIGITAL | ○*13 | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DOLBY DIGITAL Plus | ○*13 | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DOLBY TrueHD | ○*13 | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DTS SURROUND | ○*13 | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DTS 96/24 | ○*13 | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DTS-HD | ○*13 | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DTS Express | ○*13 | ○ | | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| MULTI CH STEREO | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| ROCK ARENA | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | ○*17 | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| JAZZ CLUB | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| MONO MOVIE | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| VIDEO GAME | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| MATRIX | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| VIRTUAL | | | | | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |

- *1 During playback in PURE DIRECT mode, the surround parameters are the same as in DIRECT mode.
- *4 Only when "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE+Main" (page 103), sound is output from the subwoofer.
- *13 This item can be selected when "Surround Parameters" – "PLIIz Height" (page 96) is set to "ON".
- *14 If "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" (page 103) is set to "None", this item cannot be selected.
- *15 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.
- *16 This item cannot be set when "Dynamic EQ®" (page 98) is set to "ON".
- *17 In this surround mode, bass is +6 dB, and treble is +4 dB. (Default)
- *18 For HD Audio whose sampling frequency of an input signal is more than 96 kHz, this sound parameter cannot be set.
- *19 This item cannot be set when "MultEQ® XT" (page 98) is set to "OFF" or "Manual".
- *20 This item cannot be set when "Dynamic EQ®" (page 98) is set to "OFF".
- *21 This item can be set when the input signal is analog, PCM 48 kHz or 44.1 kHz.

Types of input signals, and corresponding surround modes

This table shows the input signal that can be played in each surround mode. Check the audio signal of the input source then select the surround mode.

Symbols in the table

- This indicates the default surround mode.
- ⊙ This indicates the surround mode that is fixed when "AFDM" (page 96) is set to "ON".
- This indicates the selectable surround mode.

| Surround mode (page 52) | NOTE | Input signal types and formats | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|------|--------------------------------|----------------|-----------|---------------------|------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| | | ANALOG | PCM | | DTS-HD | | DTS | | | | | DOLBY | | DOLBY DIGITAL | | | |
| | | | PCM (multi ch) | PCM (2ch) | DTS-HD Master Audio | DTS-HD High Resolution Audio | DTS EXPRESS | DTS ES DSCRT (With Flag) | DTS ES MTRX (With Flag) | DTS (5.1ch) | DTS 96/24 | DOLBY TrueHD | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus | DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With Flag) | DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With no Flag) | DOLBY DIGITAL (5.1/5/4ch/3ch) | DOLBY DIGITAL (2ch) |
| DTS SURROUND | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DTS-HD MSTR | | | | | ● | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DTS-HD HI RES | | | | | | ● | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DTS ES DSCRT6.1 | *1*3 | | | | | | | ● | | | | | | | | | |
| DTS ES MTRX6.1 | *1*3 | | | | | | | | ● | ⊙ | | | | | | | |
| DTS SURROUND | | | | | | | | | ○ | ○ | | | | | | | |
| DTS 96/24 | | | | | | | | | | | ● | | | | | | |
| DTS (-HD) + PLIIx CINEMA | *2*3 | | | | ○ | ○ | | ○ | | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | | | |
| DTS (-HD) + PLIIx MUSIC | *1*3 | | | | ○ | ○ | | ○ | | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | | | |
| DTS (-HD) + PLIIz | *4 | | | | ○ | ○ | | ○ | | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | | | |
| DTS EXPRESS | | | | | | | | ● | | | | | | | | | |
| DTS (-HD) + NEO:6 | *1*3 | | | | ○ | ○ | | ○ | | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | | | |
| DTS NEO:6 CINEMA | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | |
| DTS NEO:6 MUSIC | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | |
| DOLBY SURROUND | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DOLBY TrueHD | | | | | | | | | | | | | ● | | | | |
| DOLBY DIGITAL+ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | ● | | | |
| DOLBY DIGITAL EX | *1*3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DOLBY (D+) (HD) +EX | *1*3 | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | ○ | | | |
| DOLBY DIGITAL | | | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | ● | ● | |
| DOLBY (D) (D+) (HD) +PLIIx CINEMA | *2*3 | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | ○ | ● | ○ | |
| DOLBY (D) (D+) (HD) +PLIIx MUSIC | *1*3 | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DOLBY (D) (D+) (HD) +PLIIz | *4 | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx CINEMA | *1*3 | ○ | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx MUSIC | *1*3 | ○ | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx GAME | *1*3 | ○ | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIz | *4 | ○ | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC II CINEMA | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC II MUSIC | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC II GAME | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC | | ○ | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | ○ | |

- *1 If "Speaker Config." - "Surr.Back" (page 103) is set to "None", this surround mode cannot be selected.
- *2 If "Speaker Config." - "Surr.Back" (page 103) is set to "1spkr" or "None", this surround mode cannot be selected.
- *3 This surround mode can be selected when "Amp Assign" (page 102) is set to "NORMAL".
- *4 If "Speaker Config." - "Front Height" (page 103) is set to "None", this surround mode cannot be selected.

| Surround mode (page 52) | NOTE | Input signal types and formats | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|------|--------------------------------|----------------|-----------|---------------------|------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| | | ANALOG | PCM | | DTS-HD | | DTS | | | | | DOLBY | | DOLBY DIGITAL | | | |
| | | | PCM (multi ch) | PCM (2ch) | DTS-HD Master Audio | DTS-HD High Resolution Audio | DTS EXPRESS | DTS ES DSCRT (With Flag) | DTS ES MTRX (With Flag) | DTS (5.1ch) | DTS 96/24 | DOLBY TrueHD | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus | DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With Flag) | DOLBY DIGITAL EX (With no Flag) | DOLBY DIGITAL (5.1/5/4ch/3ch) | DOLBY DIGITAL (2ch) |
| MULTI CH IN | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MULTI CH IN | | | ● | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MULTI CH IN + PLIIx CINEMA | *2*3 | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MULTI CH IN + PLIIx MUSIC | *1*3 | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MULTI CH IN + PLIIz | *4 | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MULTI CH IN + Dolby EX | *1*3 | | ○ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MULTI CH IN 7.1 | *3 | | ●◎ (7.1) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DIRECT | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DIRECT | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| PURE DIRECT | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| PURE DIRECT | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| DSP SIMULATION | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MULTI CH STEREO | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| ROCK ARENA | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| JAZZ CLUB | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| MONO MOVIE | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| VIDEO GAME | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| MATRIX | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| VIRTUAL | | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| STEREO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| STEREO | | ● | ○ | ● | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |

- *1 If "Speaker Config." - "Surr.Back" (page 103) is set to "None", this surround mode cannot be selected.
- *2 If "Speaker Config." - "Surr.Back" (page 103) is set to "1spkr" or "None", this surround mode cannot be selected.
- *3 This surround mode can be selected when "Amp Assign" (page 102) is set to "NORMAL".
- *4 If "Speaker Config." - "Front Height" (page 103) is set to "None", this surround mode cannot be selected.

Relationship between video signals and monitor output

| Video Convert | MAIN ZONE MONITOR OUT | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|-----------|---------|-------|------------------|---------------|-------------|----------------------------|-----------|-------|
| | Input connector | | | | Output connector | | | Menu displayed | | |
| | HDMI | COMPONENT | S-VIDEO | VIDEO | HDMI | COMPONENT | VIDEO | HDMI | COMPONENT | VIDEO |
| ON/OFF | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | Only the menu is displayed | × | × |
| ON | × | × | × | ○ | ○ <VIDEO> | × | ○ <VIDEO> | ○ (VIDEO) | × | × |
| ON | × | × | ○ | × | ○ <S-VIDEO> | × | ○ <S-VIDEO> | ○ (S-VIDEO) | × | × |
| ON | × | × | ○ | ○ | | | | | | |
| ON | × | ○ | × | × | | | × | | | × |
| ON | × | ○ | × | ○ | ○ <COMPONENT> | ○ <COMPONENT> | ○ <VIDEO> | ○ (COMPONENT) | × | × |
| ON | × | ○ | ○ | × | | | ○ <S-VIDEO> | | × | × |
| ON | ○ | × | × | × | | | × | | | × |
| ON | ○ | × | × | ○ | ○ <HDMI> | × | ○ <VIDEO> | ○ (HDMI) | × | × |
| ON | ○ | × | ○ | × | | | ○ <S-VIDEO> | | | × |
| ON | ○ | ○ | × | × | | | × | | × | × |
| ON | ○ | ○ | × | ○ | ○ <COMPONENT> | ○ <COMPONENT> | ○ <VIDEO> | | × | × |
| ON | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | | | ○ <S-VIDEO> | | × | × |
| ON | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | ○ <VIDEO> | | | × |
| OFF | × | × | × | ○ | | | ○ <S-VIDEO> | | × | × |
| OFF | × | × | ○ | × | × | × | × | | × | × |
| OFF | × | × | ○ | ○ | | | ○ <VIDEO> | | × | × |
| OFF | × | ○ | × | × | ○ <COMPONENT> | ○ <COMPONENT> | ○ <VIDEO> | | × | × |
| OFF | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | ○ <S-VIDEO> | | × | × |
| OFF | ○ | × | × | × | | | × | | | × |
| OFF | ○ | × | × | ○ | ○ <HDMI> | × | ○ <VIDEO> | Only the menu is displayed | × | × |
| OFF | ○ | × | × | ○ | | | ○ <S-VIDEO> | | | × |
| OFF | ○ | ○ | × | × | | | × | | × | × |
| OFF | ○ | ○ | × | ○ | ○ <COMPONENT> | ○ <COMPONENT> | ○ <VIDEO> | | × | × |
| OFF | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | | | ○ <S-VIDEO> | | × | × |
| OFF | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | | | × | | | × |
| OFF | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | | | ○ <VIDEO> | | × | × |
| OFF | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | | | ○ <S-VIDEO> | | × | × |

○ Video signal input present
 × No video signal input

○ < > The input signal between the < > marks is output.
 × No video signal output

○ () Superimposed on the picture indicated in ().
 × () Only the picture in () is output.
 × Neither the picture nor the menu is output.



The main zone video conversion function is compatible with the following formats: NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60.

NOTE

- The status display screen cannot be displayed at a computer's resolution (e.g. VGA) or while certain 3D video contents is being played.
- When the menu is operated on a computer's resolution (e.g. VGA) or during playback of certain 3D video content, the playback image switches to the menu screen image.

Video signal resolution conversion table

When "Video Convert" (page 90) is set to "ON", "i/p Scaler" (page 90) is set to "Analog", "Analog & HDMI" or "HDMI" are set, the resolution of the input video signal can be converted to a different resolution for output (page 5 "Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)").

The relationship between the resolution of the convertible video signal and HDMI output resolution is shown in the table below.

| | Input resolution \ Output resolution | HDMI Output | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------|-----------|-------|------|-------|
| | | 480i/576i *1 | 480p/576p | 1080i | 720p | 1080p |
| Video/S-Video Input | NTSC/NTSC4.43/PAL-M/PAL-60 | ○ (480i) | ○ (480p) | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| | PAL/PAL-N/SECAM | ○ (576i) | ○ (576p) | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Component video input | 480i | ○ (480i) | ○ (480p) | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| | 480p | - | ○ (480p) | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| | 1080i 60Hz | - | - | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| | 720p 60Hz | - | - | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| | 1080p 60Hz | - | - | - | - | ○ |
| HDMI Input | 480i | ○ (480i) | ○ (480p) | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| | 480p | - | ○ (480p) | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| | 1080i 60Hz | - | - | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| | 720p 60Hz | - | - | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| | 1080p 24Hz | - | - | - | - | ○*2 |
| | 1080p 60Hz | - | - | - | - | ○ |

○ The resolution set in "Resolution" (page 90) in the menu is output.

() The resolution inside () is output.

- Output at the same resolution as the input video signal resolution.

*1 Only output when "i/p Scaler" in the menu is set to "OFF".

*2 The resolution set in "Resolution" (page 90) in the menu is set to "Auto", and a television that supports 1080p 24Hz video signals is connected.

NOTE

- Video/component video output is output at the same resolution as the input video signal resolution.
- The 3D, Computer resolution, "x.v.Color", sYCC601 color, Adobe RGB color or Adobe YCC601 color input to HDMI is output at the same resolution as the input video signal.
- When "Video Mode" in the menu is set to "Game" or "Auto" and game contents are played, the same resolution as the input video signal is output.
- When "Resolution" in the menu is set to "Auto", the number of pixels in the television panel connected to the HDMI output connector is automatically detected, and the optimum resolution is output according to the table above.

Explanation of terms

A

Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color

Like “x.v.Color”, each of these color spaces defines a palette of available colors that is larger than the traditional RGB color model.

AirPlay

AirPlay sends (plays) contents recorded in iTunes or on an iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to a compatible device via the network.

App Store

App Store is a site that sells application software for such devices as the iPhone or iPod Touch, and is operated by Apple Inc.

Audyssey Dynamic EQ®

Dynamic EQ® solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® works in tandem with Audyssey MultEQ® XT to provide well-balanced sound for every listener at any volume level.

Audyssey Dynamic Volume®

Dynamic Volume® solves the problem of large variations in volume level between television programs, commercials, and between the soft and loud passages of movies. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is integrated into Dynamic Volume® so that as the playback volume is adjusted automatically, the perceived bass response, tonal balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT

MultEQ® XT is a room equalization solution that calibrates any audio system so that it can achieve optimum performance for every listener in a large listening area. Based on several room measurements, MultEQ® XT calculates an equalization solution that corrects for both time and frequency response problems in the listening area and also performs a fully automated surround system setup.

Auto Lip Sync

If you connect the unit to a TV that supports the Auto Lip Sync function, it can automatically correct delay between the audio and video.

D

Deep Color

This technology allows expression of more number of colors than the conventional 8 bits and can reproduce colors close to natural ones without color streak.

DLNA

DLNA and DLNA CERTIFIED are trademarks and/or service marks of Digital Living Network Alliance. Some contents may not be compatible with other DLNA CERTIFIED™ products.

Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital signal format developed by Dolby Laboratories.

A total of 5.1 channels are played: 3 front channels (“FL”, “FR” and “C”), 2 surround channels (“SL” and “SR”) and the “LFE” channel for low frequencies.

Because of this, there is no crosstalk between channels and a realistic sound field with a “three-dimensional” feeling (sense of distance, movement and positioning) is achieved.

A realistic, powerful sense of presence is achieved when playing movie sources in AV rooms as well.

Dolby Digital EX

Dolby Digital EX is a 6.1-channel surround format proposed by Dolby Laboratories that allows users to enjoy in their homes the “DOLBY DIGITAL SURROUND EX” audio format jointly developed by Dolby Laboratories and Lucas Films.

The 6.1 channels of sound, including surround back channels, provide improved sound positioning and expression of space.

Dolby Digital Plus

Dolby Digital Plus is an improved Dolby Digital signal format that is compatible with up to 7.1 channels of discrete digital sound and also improves sound quality thanks to extra data bit rate performance. It is upwardly compatible with conventional Dolby Digital, so it offers greater flexibility in response to the source signal and the conditions of the playback device.

Dolby Pro Logic II

Dolby Pro Logic II is a matrix decoding technology developed by Dolby Laboratories.

Regular music such as that on CDs is encoded into 5 channels to achieve an excellent surround effect. The surround channel signals are converted into stereo and full band signals (with a frequency response of 20 Hz to 20 kHz or greater) to create a “three-dimensional” sound image offering a rich sense of presence for all stereo sources.

Dolby Pro Logic IIx

Dolby Pro Logic IIx is a further improved version of the Dolby Pro Logic II matrix decoding technology. Audio signals recorded in 2 channels are decoded to achieve a natural sound with up to 7.1 channels. There are three modes: “Music” suited for playing music, “Cinema” suited for playing movies, and “Game” which is optimized for playing games.

Dolby Pro Logic IIz

Dolby Pro Logic IIz introduces a new dimension to Home Entertainment through the addition of a pair of front height channels. Compatible with stereo, 5.1-channel and 7.1-channel content, Dolby Pro Logic IIz provides enhanced spaciousness, depth and dimension to movies, concert video and video game playback while maintaining the full integrity of the source mix.

Dolby Pro Logic IIz identifies and decodes spatial cues that occur naturally in all content, directing this information to the front height channels, complementing the performance of left and right surround sound speakers. Content that is encoded with Dolby Pro Logic IIz height channel information can be even more revealing, with perceptually discrete height channel information bringing an exciting new dimension to home entertainment.

Dolby Pro Logic IIz, with front height channels is also an ideal alternative for households that cannot support the placement of back surround speakers of a typical 7.1-channel system but may have bookshelf space available to support the addition of height speakers.

Dolby TrueHD

Dolby TrueHD is a high definition audio technology developed by Dolby Laboratories, using lossless coding technology to faithfully reproduce the sound of the studio master.

This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96kHz/24bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192kHz/24bit resolution. Dolby TrueHD is adopted for applications that put very high importance on sound quality.

Downmix

This function converts the number of channels of surround audio to less number of channels and plays back.

DTS

This is an abbreviation of Digital Theater System, which is a digital audio system developed by DTS. When playing back audio by connecting this system with a device such as DTS amplifier, accurate sound field position and realistic sound effect as if you are in a movie theater can be obtained.

DTS 96/24

DTS 96/24 is a digital audio format enabling high sound quality playback in 5.1 channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz and 24 bit quantization on DVD-Video.

DTS Digital Surround

DTS Digital Surround is the standard digital surround format of DTS, Inc., compatible with a sampling frequency of 44.1 or 48 kHz and up to 5.1 channels of digital discrete surround sound.

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format adding a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format inserting a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound through matrix encoding. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

DTS Express

DTS Express is an audio format supporting low bit rates (max. 5.1 channels, 24 to 256 kbps).

DTS-HD

This audio technology provides higher sound quality and enhanced functionality than the conventional DTS and is adopted as an optional audio for Blu-ray Disc. This technology supports multi-channel, high data transfer speed, high sampling frequency, and lossless audio playback. Maximum 7.1-channels are supported in Blu-ray Disc.

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an improved version of the conventional DTS, DTS-ES and DTS 96/24 signals formats, compatible with sampling frequencies of 96 or 48 kHz and up to 7.1 channels of discrete digital sound. High data bit rate performance provides high quality sound. This format is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

DTS-HD Master Audio

DTS-HD Master Audio is a lossless audio format created by Digital Theater System (DTS). This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96kHz/24bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192kHz/24bit resolution. It is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

DTS NEO:6™ Surround

DTS NEO:6™ is a matrix decoding technology for achieving 6.1-channel surround playback with 2-channel sources. It includes "DTS NEO:6 Cinema" suited for playing movies and "DTS NEO:6 Music" suited for playing music.

Dynamic range

The difference between the maximum undistorted sound level and the minimum discernible level above the noise emitted by the device.

F**FLAC**

FLAC stands for Free lossless Audio Codec, and is a lossless free audio file format. Lossless means that the audio is compressed without any loss in quality. The FLAC license is as shown below.

Copyright (C) 2000,2001,2002,2003,2004,2005,2006,2007,2008,2009 Josh Coalson

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
 - Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
 - Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.
- THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

H**HDCP**

When transmitting digital signals between devices, this copyright protection technology encrypts the signals to prevent content from being copied without authorization.

HDMI

This is an abbreviation of High-Definition Multimedia Interface, which is an AV digital interface that can be connected to a TV or amplifier. Video signal and audio signal can be connected using 1 cable.

I**iTunes**

iTunes is the name of the multimedia player provided by Apple Inc. It enables management and playback of multimedia contents including music and movies. iTunes supports many main file formats including AAC, WAV, and MP3.

L**LFE**

This is an abbreviation of Low Frequency Effect, which is an output channel that emphasizes low frequency effect sound. Surround audio is intensified by outputting 20 Hz to 120 Hz deep bass.

M**MAIN ZONE**

The room where this unit is placed is called the MAIN ZONE.

MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer-3)

This is an internationally standardized audio data compression scheme, using the "MPEG-1" video compression standard. It compresses the data volume to about one eleventh its original size while maintaining sound quality equivalent to a music CD.

MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group), MPEG-2, MPEG-4

These are the names for digital compression format standards used for the encoding of video and audio. Video standards include "MPEG-1 Video", "MPEG-2 Video", "MPEG-4 Visual", "MPEG-4 AVC". Audio standards include "MPEG-1 Audio", "MPEG-2 Audio", "MPEG-4 AAC".

P**Progressive (sequential scanning)**

This is a scanning system of video signal that displays 1 frame of video as one image. Compared to the interlace system, this system provides images with less flickering and bleeding.

Protection Circuit

This is a function to prevent damage to devices within the power supply when an abnormality such as an overload, excess voltage occurs or temperature for any reason.

In this unit, the power indicator blinks and the unit enters standby mode when an abnormality occurs.

S**Sampling frequency**

Sampling involves taking a reading of a sound wave (analog signal) at regular intervals and expressing the height of the wave at each reading in digitized format (producing a digital signal).

The number of readings taken in one second is called the "sampling frequency". The larger the value, the closer the reproduced sound is to the original.

Speaker impedance

This is an AC resistance value, indicated in Ω (ohms). Greater power can be obtained with this value smaller.

sYCC601 color

Like "x.v.Color", each of these color spaces defines a palette of available colors that is larger than the traditional RGB color model.

V**vTuner**

This is a free online content server for Internet radio. Note that usage fees are included in upgrade costs.

For inquiries about this service, visit the vTuner site below.

vTuner website: <http://www.radiodemon.com>

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo or an authorized subsidiary.

W**Windows Media DRM**

This is a copyright protection technology developed by Microsoft.

Content providers are using the digital rights management technology for Windows Media contained in this device (WM-DRM) to protect the integrity of their content (Secure Content) so that their intellectual property, including copyright, in such content is not misappropriated. This device uses WM-DRM software to play Secure Content (WM-DRM Software). If the security of the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content (Secure Content Owners) may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software's right to acquire new licenses to copy, display and/or play Secure Content. Revocation does not alter the WM-DRM Software's ability to play unprotected content. A list of revoked WM-DRM Software is sent to your device whenever you download a license for Secure Content from the Internet or from a PC. Microsoft may, in conjunction with such license, also download revocation list onto your device on behalf of Secure Content Owners.

Windows Media Player Ver.11 or later

This is a media player distributed free of charge by Microsoft Corporation.

It can play playlists created with Ver.11 or later of Windows Media Player, as well as WMA, DRM WMA, WAV, and other files.

WMA (Windows Media Audio)

This is audio compression technology developed by Microsoft Corporation.

WMA data can be encoded using Windows Media® Player Ver.7, 7.1, Windows Media® Player for Windows® XP and Windows Media® Player 9 Series.

To encode WMA files, only use applications authorized by Microsoft Corporation. If you use an unauthorized application, the file may not work properly.

X**x.v.Color**

This function lets HDTVs display colors more accurately. It enables display with natural, vivid colors. "x.v.Color" is a Sony registered trademark.

Z**ZONE2**

This unit can operate in a room other than the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE) (ZONE2 playback). The room for ZONE2 playback is called ZONE2.

Troubleshooting

If a problem should arise, first check the following:

1. Are the connections correct?




2. Is the set being operated as described in the owner's manual?

3. Are the other devices operating properly?

If this unit does not operate properly, check the items listed in the table below. Should the problem persist, there may be a malfunction.

In this case, disconnect the power immediately and contact your store of purchase.



[General]

| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|--|--|--|
| Power does not turn on. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check whether the power plug is correctly inserted into the power outlet. The protection circuit is active. Disconnect the power plug from the electric outlet, wait 5 to 10 seconds and then insert it back into the outlet. |  5 138 |
| Display is off. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set "Dimmer" on the menu to something other than "OFF". | 114 |
| The power indicator is blinking red in intervals of approximately 2 seconds. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The temperature inside the unit has risen. Please turn off power once, and re-apply the power after the temperature has fallen sufficiently. Please re-install this unit in a place having good ventilation. | – – |
| The power indicator is blinking red in intervals of approximately 0.5 seconds. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Please use speakers which have the specified impedance. The speaker cable has shorted (is touching). Firmly twist the core wire in the speaker cable, and then re-connect it to the speaker terminal. |  6  6 , 59 |
| After turning on the power, the power indicator is blinking red in intervals of approximately 0.5 seconds. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This unit amplifier circuit has failed. Turn off the power and please contact the DENON service adviser. | – |
| Set does not operate properly. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reset the microprocessor. | 144 |

[HDMI]

| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|--|--|--|
| No audio is output with HDMI connection. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connection of the HDMI connectors. When outputting HDMI audio from the speakers, set "HDMI Audio Out" on the menu to "Amp". When outputting HDMI audio from a TV, set "HDMI Audio Out" on the menu to "TV". | 8 106 106 |
| No video is output with HDMI connection. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connection of the HDMI connectors. Set the input source to match the connected HDMI connector. Check whether the TV is compatible with copyright protection (HDCP). If connected to a device not compatible with HDCP, video will not be output correctly. | 8 8 , 26 7 |
| When the following operations are performed on devices compatible with HDMI control, the same operations occur on this unit. • Power ON/OFF • Switching audio output devices • Adjust volume • Switch input source | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set "HDMI Control" – "Control" in the menu to "OFF". Furthermore, if you do not want to link the power off operation with devices compatible with HDMI control, set "Power Off Control" in the menu to "OFF". | 68 , 106 |

[Video]

| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|---------------------|---|--|
| No picture appears. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the TV connection. Set the TV input correctly. |  3  3 |

[Audio]

| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|--|---|---|
| Audio is not output. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the connections for all devices. • Check the speaker connections and configurations. • Check whether the audio device power is turned on. • Adjust the master volume. • Cancel the mute mode. • Select a suitable input source. • Select a suitable input mode. • Disconnect the headphones. No sound is output from the speakers when headphones are connected. | 3, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17 6, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64 – 27, 80 27, 80 26, 80 91 125 |
| No sound is produced from surround speaker. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the surround speakers are connected to the SURROUND terminals. | – |
| No sound is produced from surround back speaker. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if “Amp Assign” is set appropriately in order to output audio from the surround back speakers. • Set “Speaker Config.” – “Surr.Back” on the menu to something other than “None”. • Set “Surround Parameters” – “Surround Back” on the menu to something other than “OFF”. • Set the surround mode to something other than “STEREO” and “VIRTUAL”. | 102 103 96 52 |
| No sound is produced from front height speaker. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set “Surround Parameters” – “PLIIz Height” on the menu to “ON”. • Check if “Amp Assign” is set appropriately in order to output audio from the front height speakers. • Set “Speaker Config.” – “Front Height” on the menu to something other than “None”. | 96 102 103 |
| No sound is produced from subwoofer. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the subwoofer connections. • Turn on the subwoofer’s power. • Set “Speaker Config.” – “Subwoofer” on the menu to “Yes”. • If “Front” and “Center” for “Speaker Config.” are set to “Large”, and “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE”, no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected surround mode. | 6, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64 – 102 102, 103 |

| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|--|--|--|
| DTS sound is not output. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set “Decode Mode” on the menu to “Auto” or “DTS”. | 91 |
| Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus audio is not output. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make HDMI connections. | 8 |
| Dolby PLII mode or DTS NEO:6 mode cannot be selected. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that “Speaker Config.” – “Center” or “Surround” is set to other than “None”. If the speaker system is 2.0/2.1ch, this surround mode cannot be selected. • When headphones are used, Dolby PLII or DTS NEO:6 cannot be selected. | 102 – |
| Audyssey MultEQ [®] XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ [®] and Audyssey Dynamic Volume [®] cannot be selected. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch the surround mode to other than “DIRECT” or “PURE DIRECT”. • When headphones are used, MultEQ[®] XT, Dynamic EQ[®] and Dynamic Volume[®] cannot be selected. | 52 – |
| Dynamic EQ [®] and Dynamic Volume [®] cannot be selected. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Run Audyssey[®] Auto Setup. | 19, 65 |
| RESTORER cannot be selected. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that an analog signal or PCM signal (fs=44.1/48 kHz) is input. For playback of multichannel signals such as Dolby Digital or DTS surround, RESTORER cannot be used. • Switch the surround mode to other than “DIRECT” or “PURE DIRECT”. | 99 52 |

[Radio]

| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|--|--|--|
| Reception fails, or there is a lot of noise or distortion. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the antenna orientation or position. • Separate the AM loop antenna from the unit. • Use an FM outdoor antenna. • Separate the antenna from other connection cables. | 16 16 16 16 |

[Control dock for iPod]

| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|------------------------|--|---|
| iPod cannot be played. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the iPod connections. • Insert the AC adaptor of the iPod control dock into the power outlet. • Switch the input source to "DOCK". | 14 - 26 |



[Internet radio / Media server / iPod / USB memory device / Flickr / Napster / Pandora / Rhapsody]

| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|--|---|--|
| When a USB memory device is connected, "USB" is not displayed on the menu. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The set cannot recognize a USB memory device. Check the connection. • A USB memory device not conforming to mass storage class or MTP standards is connected. Connect a USB memory device conforming to mass storage class or MTP standards. • A USB memory device that the set cannot recognize is connected. This is not a malfunction. DENON does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. • USB memory device is connected via USB hub. Connect the USB memory device directly to the USB port. | 15 - - - |
| Files on a USB memory device cannot be played. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • USB memory device is in format other than FAT16 or FAT32. Set the format to FAT16 or FAT32. For details, refer to the USB memory device's operating instructions. • USB memory device is divided into multiple partitions. When divided into multiple partitions, only files stored in the top partition can be played. • Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record the files in a compatible format. • You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit. | - - 50 50 |
| The file names are not displayed properly ("..." etc.). | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Characters that cannot be displayed are used. This is not a malfunction. On this unit, characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with a "." (period). | - |

| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|--|---|--|
| Internet radio cannot be played. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ethernet cable is not properly connected or network is disconnected. Check the connection status. • Program is being broadcast in non-compatible format. Only Internet radio programs in MP3 and WMA can be played on this unit. • The router's firewall is activated. Check the router's firewall settings. • Radio station is not currently broadcasting. Choose a radio station that is currently broadcasting. • IP address is wrong. Check the set's IP address. | 17 35 - 37 111 |
| Files stored on a computer cannot be played. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record in a compatible format. • You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit. • Set and computer are connected by USB cable. The set's USB port cannot be used for connection to a computer. | 35 35 - |
| Server is not found, or it is not possible to connect to the server. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The computer's or router's firewall is activated. Check the computer's or router's firewall settings. • Computer's power is not turned on. Turn on the power. • Server is not running. Launch the server. • Set's IP address is wrong. Check the set's IP address. | - - - 111 |
| iPod cannot be played. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Some iPods do not support being used connected directly to the USB port. | 15 |
| Cannot connect to preset or favorite radio stations. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Radio station is not currently broadcasting. Wait a while before trying again. • Radio station is not currently in service. It is not possible to connect to radio stations that are no longer in service. | - - |
| For some radio stations, "Radio station server full" or "Connection down" is displayed and station cannot be connected to. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Station is congested or not currently broadcasting. Wait a while before trying again. | - |
| Sound is broken during playback. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Network's signal transfer speed is slow or communications lines or radio station is congested. This is not a malfunction. When playing broadcast data with a high bit rate, the sound may be broken, depending on the communications conditions. | - |

| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|--|---|--|
| Sound quality is poor or played sound is noisy. | • File being played has a low bit rate. This is not a malfunction. | – |
| Cannot login to Rhapsody. (“Incorrect Username or Password” is displayed.) | • Login information is incorrect. Check if the Username for Rhapsody has been properly entered. Re-enter the Password. (Password is not displayed.) www.rhapsody.com/denon | 48 , 111 |
| Cannot compile Playlist. | • This unit does not respond to playlist compilation. When the playlist is compiled in PC Application, it is registered to “My Library”. In this way, the playlist can be played in this unit | – |
| Cannot delete Rhapsody Channel registered in “My Channels”. | • Cannot be done with this unit. Delete from PC Application. | – |
| Cannot delete Tracks, Playlists, Channels registered in “My Library” | • Cannot be done with this unit. Delete from PC Application. | – |
| Cannot login to Napster. (“Incorrect Username or Password” is displayed.) | • Login information is incorrect. Check if the Username for Napster has been properly entered. Re-enter the Password. (Password is not displayed.) http://www.napster.com/choose/index_default.html | 43 , 111 |
| Cannot login to Pandora. (“Email address” or “Password” is displayed.) | • Login information is incorrect. Check if the “Email address” for Pandora has been properly entered. Re-enter the “Password”. (Password is not displayed.) http://www.pandora.com/denon | 45 |

[AirPlay]

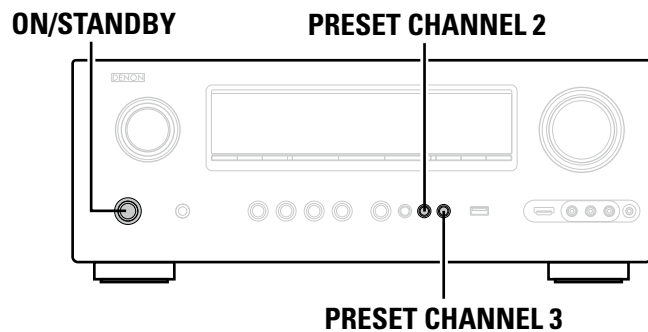
| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|---|---|---|
| The AirPlay icon  is not displayed in iTunes or on the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This unit and the computer or iPhone/iPod touch/iPad are not connected to the same network (LAN). Connect the computer or iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to the same network as this unit. • iTunes or the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad do not have firmware that supports AirPlay installed. Update to the latest firmware. | 17 115 |
| No sound. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The volume in iTunes or on the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad is set to the minimum setting. Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • This unit is not selected in the screen that is displayed when iTunes or the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad is started. Start iTunes or switch on the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad, click the AirPlay icon  in the displayed screen, and select this unit. | – 73 |

[Remote Control Unit]

| Symptom | Cause/Solution | Page |
|--|--|--|
| The set cannot be operated with the remote control unit. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Batteries are worn out. Replace with new batteries. • Operate the remote control unit within a distance of about 23 ft/7 m from this unit and at an angle of within 30°. • Remove any obstacle between this unit and the remote control unit. • Insert the batteries in the proper direction, checking the ⊕ and ⊖ marks. • The set’s remote control sensor is exposed to strong light (direct sunlight, inverter type fluorescent bulb light, etc.). Move the set to a place in which the remote control sensor will not be exposed to strong light. • The ZONE SELECT setting is not correct. Press ZONE SELECT to select the zone to operate. • The operation mode does not match the settings of the device to operate. Check the operation mode. | 129 129 129 129 118 118 |

Resetting the microprocessor

Perform this procedure if the display is abnormal or if operations cannot be performed. When the microprocessor is reset, all the settings are reset to their default values.



- 1** Turn off the power using **ON/STANDBY**.
- 2** Press **ON/STANDBY** while simultaneously pressing **PRESET CHANNEL 2** and **PRESET CHANNEL 3**.
- 3** Once the display starts flashing at intervals of about 1 second, release the two buttons.



If in step 3 the display does not flash at intervals of about 1 second, start over from step 1.

Specifications

□ Audio section

• Power amplifier

Rated output:

Front:
105 W + 105 W (8 Ω, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)
135 W + 135 W (6 Ω, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

Center:

105 W (8 Ω, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)
135 W (6 Ω, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

Surround:

105 W + 105 W (8 Ω, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)
135 W + 135 W (6 Ω, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

Surround back:

105 W + 105 W (8 Ω, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)
135 W + 135 W (6 Ω, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

6 – 16 Ω

• Output connectors:

• Analog

Input sensitivity/Input impedance:

200 mV/47 kΩ

Frequency response:

10 Hz – 100 kHz — +1, –3 dB (DIRECT mode)

S/N:

100 dB (IHF-A weighted, DIRECT mode)

□ Video section

• Standard video connectors

Input/output level and impedance:

1 V_{p-p}, 75 Ω

Frequency response:

5 Hz – 10 MHz — 0, –3 dB

• Color component video connector

Input/output level and impedance:

Y (brightness) signal — 1 V_{p-p}, 75 Ω

P_B / C_B signal — 0.7 V_{p-p}, 75 Ω

P_R / C_R signal — 0.7 V_{p-p}, 75 Ω

Frequency response:

5 Hz – 60 MHz — 0, –3 dB

□ Tuner section

[FM]

[AM]

(Note: μV at 75 Ω, 0 dBf = 1 × 10⁻¹⁵ W)

Receiving Range:

87.5 MHz – 107.9 MHz

520 kHz – 1710 kHz

Usable Sensitivity:

1.2 μV (12.8 dBf)

18 μV

50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:

MONO 2.0 μV (17.3 dBf)

S/N (IHF-A):

MONO 72 dB

STEREO 67 dB

Total harmonic Distortion (at 1 kHz):

MONO 0.3 %

STEREO 0.7 %

□ General

Power supply:

AC 120 V, 60 Hz

Power consumption:

600 W

0.1 W (Standby)

2.2 W (CEC standby)

For purposes of improvement, specifications and design are subject to change without notice.

Index

Numerics

| | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 2.1-channel | 62 |
| 2ch Direct/Stereo | 107 |
| 3D | 7 |
| 6.1-channel | 58, 61 |
| 7.1-channel | 57, 58, 59, 60 |

A

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----------|
| Accessories | 2 |
| Add New Feature | 115 |
| Adjust Channel | 99 |
| Adjusting the master volume | 27 |
| Adobe RGB color / Adobe YCC601 color | 137 |
| AFDM | 96 |
| AirPlay | 73, 137 |
| AM loop antenna | 16 |
| Amp Assign | 102 |
| App Store | 137 |
| ARC | 7 |
| Aspect | 90 |
| Audio Adjust | 95 |
| Audio Delay | 99 |
| Audio Setup | 107 |
| AUDIO/VIDEO ADJUST | 94 |
| Audyssey® Auto Setup | 19, 65 |
| Audyssey Dynamic EQ® | 98, 137 |
| Audyssey Dynamic Volume® | 98, 137 |
| Audyssey MultEQ® XT | 98, 137 |
| Audyssey Settings | 98 |
| Auto Lip Sync | 106, 137 |
| Auto Preset | 92 |
| Auto Setup | 19, 65 |
| Auto Surround Mode | 107 |

B

| | |
|--------------|---------|
| Bass | 97, 112 |
| Bass Setting | 103 |
| Bi-amp | 63 |
| Brightness | 100 |
| Browse mode | 29, 31 |

C

| | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| Cable | |
| Audio cable | 11, 12, 13, 14, 16 |
| Coaxial digital cable | 11, 12 |
| Component video cable | 10, 11, 12 |
| Ethernet cable | 17 |
| HDMI cable | 8 |
| Optical cable | 10, 13 |

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| S-Video cable | 13 |
| Video cable | 10, 11, 12, 13, 14 |
| Center Image | 95 |
| Center Width | 95 |
| Channel | 112 |
| Channel Level | 70, 104 |
| Characters | 85 |
| Chroma Level | 100 |
| Cinema EQ | 95 |
| Condensation | 3 |
| Connection | |
| Antenna | 16 |
| Blu-ray Disc player | 8, 11 |
| Cable TV | 12 |
| CD player | 16 |
| Control dock for iPod | 14 |
| Digital camcorder | 8, 14 |
| Digital video recorder | 8, 13 |
| DVD player | 8, 11 |
| External control device | 18 |
| Game console | 8 |
| HDMI | 7 |
| Home network (LAN) | 17 |
| iPod (USB) | 15 |
| Satellite tuner | 12 |
| Set-top box | 8, 12 |
| Speaker | 59 |
| TV | 8, 10 |
| USB memory device | 15 |
| Content Type | 7 |
| Contrast | 100 |
| Crossover Freq. | 105 |
| Curve Copy | 99 |

D

| | |
|---------------------|---------|
| D.COMP | 95 |
| Decode Mode | 91 |
| Deep Color | 7, 137 |
| Delay Time | 95 |
| Dimension | 95 |
| Dimmer | 114 |
| Display | 126 |
| Distance | 104 |
| DLNA | 137 |
| Dolby | |
| Dolby Digital | 137 |
| Dolby Digital EX | 137 |
| Dolby Digital Plus | 137 |
| Dolby Pro Logic II | 137 |
| Dolby Pro Logic IIx | 137 |
| Dolby Pro Logic IIz | 57, 137 |
| Dolby TrueHD | 137 |

| | |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Downmix | 137 |
| DRC | 95 |
| DTS | 137 |
| DTS 96/24 | 137 |
| DTS Digital Surround | 137 |
| DTS-ES Discrete 6.1 | 137 |
| DTS-ES Matrix 6.1 | 137 |
| DTS Express | 137 |
| DTS-HD | 138 |
| DTS-HD High Resolution Audio | 138 |
| DTS-HD Master Audio | 138 |
| DTS NEO:6™ Surround | 138 |
| Dynamic EQ® | 98 |
| Dynamic range | 138 |
| Dynamic Volume® | 98 |

E

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Effect Level | 95 |
| EQ Customize | 107 |
| Error messages (Auto Setup) | 24 |

F

| | |
|------------------------|--------|
| Fader function | 70 |
| Firmware Update | 115 |
| FLAC | 138 |
| Flickr | 36, 41 |
| FM/AM | 33 |
| FM indoor antenna | 16 |
| Front A/B (connection) | 58, 62 |
| Front Height | 103 |
| Front height speaker | 58, 60 |
| Front Panel | 125 |
| Front Speaker Setup | 105 |

G

| | |
|-----|-----|
| GUI | 113 |
|-----|-----|

H

| | |
|----------------|---------|
| HDCP | 7, 138 |
| HDMI | 7, 138 |
| HDMI 1.4a | 7 |
| HDMI Audio Out | 106 |
| HDMI Control | 68, 106 |
| HDMI Setup | 106 |
| Headphones | 125 |
| Height Gain | 96 |
| HPF | 112 |
| Hue | 100 |

I

| | |
|----------------------|-----|
| INFORMATION | 117 |
| Audio Input Signal | 117 |
| Auto Surround Mode | 117 |
| HDMI Information | 117 |
| Preset Channel | 117 |
| Quick Select | 117 |
| Status | 117 |
| Input Assign | 88 |
| Input Mode | 91 |
| Input signal | 133 |
| Inputting characters | 85 |
| Interval | 92 |
| iPod play | 32 |
| i/p Scaler | 90 |
| iTunes | 138 |

L

| | |
|--------------------|---------|
| Language | 116 |
| Lch Level | 112 |
| LFE | 95, 138 |
| Listening mode | 52 |
| Listening position | 19 |

M

| | |
|------------------|----------|
| Maintenance Mode | 115 |
| MAIN ZONE | 138 |
| Manual EQ | 99 |
| Master volume | 114 |
| Media controller | 76 |
| Menu map | 82 |
| Mode | 95 |
| MP3 | 138 |
| MPEG | 138 |
| MultEQ® XT | 98 |
| Mute Level | 112, 113 |

N

| | |
|---------------------|---------|
| Napster | 36, 43 |
| Network Setup | 25, 108 |
| Napster Account | 111 |
| Network Connecting | 108 |
| Network Information | 111 |
| Other | 110 |
| Rhapsody Account | 111 |

| | |
|---|----------|
| O | |
| Option Setup | 113 |
| Add New Feature | 115 |
| Dimmer | 114 |
| Firmware Update | 115 |
| GUI | 113 |
| Maintenance Mode | 115 |
| Quick Select Name | 114 |
| Remote Setup Guide | 114 |
| Setup Lock | 114 |
| Source Delete | 113 |
| Trigger Out | 114 |
| Volume Control | 113 |
| Zone Rename | 114 |
| P | |
| Pandora | 36, 45 |
| Panorama | 95 |
| Parameter Check | 25 |
| Party mode | 74 |
| Picture Adjust | 100 |
| Play | 91 |
| Playback | |
| Blu-ray Disc player | 28 |
| CD player | 28 |
| Direct | 52, 55 |
| DVD player | 28 |
| Flickr | 41 |
| FM/AM | 33 |
| Internet radio | 37 |
| iPod (Control dock for iPod) | 29 |
| iPod (USB) | 31 |
| Media server | 40 |
| MP3 | 36, 50 |
| MPEG-4 AAC | 36, 50 |
| Napster | 43 |
| Network audio | 35 |
| Pandora | 45 |
| Pure direct | 52, 55 |
| Rhapsody | 48 |
| Stereo | 55 |
| USB memory device | 50 |
| WMA | 36, 50 |
| ZONE2 | 80 |
| Playback Mode (Control dock for iPod) | 92 |
| Playback Mode (NET/USB) | 92 |
| PLIIZ Height | 96 |
| Power On Level | 112, 113 |
| Preset codes | 114, 119 |
| Preset Name | 93 |
| Preset Skip | 93 |
| Presetting radio stations | 33 |

| | |
|------------------------------------|------------|
| Progressive | 138 |
| Progressive Mode | 90 |
| Protection circuit | 138 |
| Q | |
| Quick select | 71, 81 |
| Quick Select Name | 114 |
| R | |
| Random | 92 |
| Rch Level | 112 |
| Rear panel | 127 |
| REC OUT mode | 72 |
| Reference Level Offset | 98 |
| Remote control setting | 20, 65 |
| Remote control unit | 118, 128 |
| Inserting the batteries | 129 |
| Operating AV devices | 118 |
| Operating devices | 121 |
| Registering Preset Codes | 119 |
| Remote mode | 29, 31 |
| Remote Setup Guide | 114 |
| Rename | 91 |
| Repeat | 92 |
| Resetting the microprocessor | 144 |
| Resolution | 90 |
| RESTORER | 99 |
| Rhapsody | 36, 48 |
| Room Size | 95 |
| S | |
| Sampling frequency | 138 |
| Screensaver | 113 |
| Selecting the input source | 26 |
| Setup Lock | 114 |
| Shuffle | 92 |
| Sleep timer | 69, 81 |
| Slide Show | 92 |
| Source Delete | 113 |
| Source Level | 91 |
| SOURCE SELECT | 87 |
| Speaker | |
| Connect | 59 |
| Install | 57 |
| Set up | 19, 25, 65 |
| Speaker Config. | 102 |
| Speaker impedance | 59, 138 |
| Speaker Setup | 102 |
| Still Picture | 92 |
| Subwoofer | 97 |
| Subwoofer setting | 20 |
| Surr.Back | 103 |

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------|
| Surround Back | 96 |
| Surround back speaker | 57, 58, 59, 61 |
| Surround Mode | 52, 131 |
| Surround Parameters | 95 |
| sYCC601 color | 138 |
| SYSTEM SETUP | 101 |

| | |
|---|---------|
| T | |
| Tone | 97 |
| Tone Control | 97 |
| Trademark | 130 |
| Treble | 97, 112 |
| Trigger Out | 114 |
| Troubleshooting | 140 |
| Turning off the sound temporarily | 27 |

| | |
|------------------------|----------|
| V | |
| Video | 89 |
| Video conversion | 5 |
| Video Convert | 90 |
| Video Mode | 89 |
| Video Select | 89 |
| Volume Control | 113 |
| Volume Display | 113 |
| Volume Level | 112 |
| Volume Limit | 112, 113 |
| vTuner | 138 |

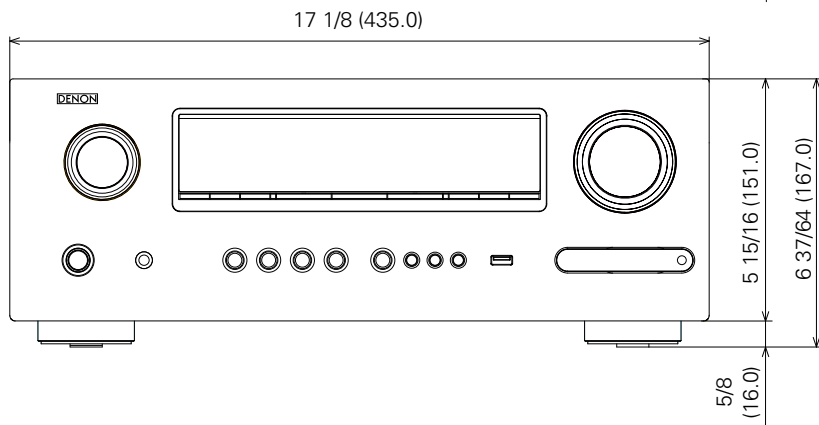
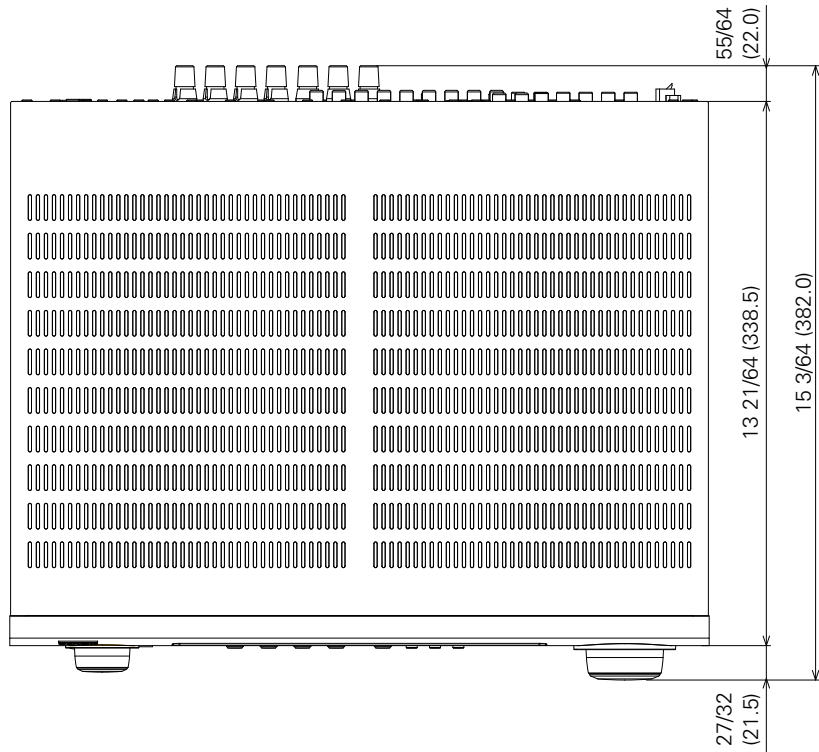
| | |
|--|-----|
| W | |
| Web control | 77 |
| Windows Media DRM | 139 |
| Windows Media Player Ver.11 or later | 139 |
| WMA | 139 |

| | |
|-----------------|--------|
| X | |
| x.v.Color | 7, 139 |

| | |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Z | |
| ZONE2 | 79, 126, 139 |
| ZONE2 Setup | 112 |
| Zone Management | 75 |
| Zone Rename | 114 |

Dimensions

Unit : in. (mm)



Weight : 24 lbs 4 oz (11.0 kg)

